

the Commission shall determine that such rule, regulation, or order is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors.

(52) The term "foreign financial regulatory authority" means any (A) foreign securities authority, (B) other governmental body or foreign equivalent of a self-regulatory organization empowered by a foreign government to administer or enforce its laws relating to the regulation of fiduciaries, trusts, commercial lending, insurance, trading in contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery, or other instruments traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market, board of trade, or foreign equivalent, or other financial activities, or (C) membership organization a function of which is to regulate participation of its members in activities listed above.

(53)(A) The term "small business related security" means a security that meets standards of credit-worthiness as established by the Commission, and either—

- (i) represents an interest in 1 or more promissory notes or leases of personal property evidencing the obligation of a small business concern and originated by an insured depository institution, insured credit union, insurance company, or similar institution which is supervised and examined by a Federal or State authority, or a finance company or leasing company; or
- (ii) is secured by an interest in 1 or more promissory notes or leases of personal property (with or without recourse to the issuer or lessee) and provides for payments of principal in relation to payments, or reasonable projections of payments, on notes or leases described in clause (i).

(B) For purposes of this paragraph—

- (i) an "interest in a promissory note or a lease of personal property" includes ownership rights, certificates of interest or participation in such notes or leases, and rights designed to assure servicing of such notes or leases, or the receipt or timely receipt of amounts payable under such notes or leases;
- (ii) the term "small business concern" means a business that meets the criteria for a small business concern established by the Small Business Administration under section 632(a) of this title;
- (iii) the term "insured depository institution" has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1813]; and
- (iv) the term "insured credit union" has the same meaning as in section 1752 of title 12.

(54) QUALIFIED INVESTOR.—

(A) DEFINITION.—Except as provided in subparagraph (B), for purposes of this chapter, the term "qualified investor" means—

- (i) any investment company registered with the Commission under section 8 of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–8];
- (ii) any issuer eligible for an exclusion from the definition of investment company pursuant to section 3(c)(7) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(7)];
- (iii) any bank (as defined in paragraph (6) of this subsection), savings association (as defined in section 3(b) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1813(b)]), broker, dealer, insurance company (as defined in section 2(a)(13) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77b(a)(13)]), or business development company (as defined in section 2(a)(48) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–2(a)(48)]);
- (iv) any small business investment company licensed by the United States Small Business Administration under section 301(c) [15 U.S.C. 681(c)] or (d) ¹ of the Small Business Investment Act of 1958;
- (v) any State sponsored employee benefit plan, or any other employee benefit plan, within the meaning of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 [29 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.], other than an individual retirement account, if the investment decisions are made by a plan fiduciary, as defined in section 3(21) of that Act [29 U.S.C. 1002(21)], which is either a bank, savings and loan association, insurance company, or registered investment adviser;
- (vi) any trust whose purchases of securities are directed by a person described in clauses (i)

through (v) of this subparagraph;

(vii) any market intermediary exempt under section 3(c)(2) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-3(c)(2)];

(viii) any associated person of a broker or dealer other than a natural person;

(ix) any foreign bank (as defined in section 1(b)(7) of the International Banking Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3101(7)]);

(x) the government of any foreign country;

(xi) any corporation, company, or partnership that owns and invests on a discretionary basis, not less than \$25,000,000 in investments;

(xii) any natural person who owns and invests on a discretionary basis, not less than \$25,000,000 in investments;

(xiii) any government or political subdivision, agency, or instrumentality of a government who owns and invests on a discretionary basis not less than \$50,000,000 in investments; or

(xiv) any multinational or supranational entity or any agency or instrumentality thereof.

(B) ALTERED THRESHOLDS FOR ASSET-BACKED SECURITIES AND LOAN PARTICIPATIONS.—For purposes of subsection (a)(5)(C)(iii) of this section and section 206(a)(5) of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, the term "qualified investor" has the meaning given such term by subparagraph (A) of this paragraph except that clauses (xi) and (xii) shall be applied by substituting "\$10,000,000" for "\$25,000,000".

(C) ADDITIONAL AUTHORITY.—The Commission may, by rule or order, define a "qualified investor" as any other person, taking into consideration such factors as the financial sophistication of the person, net worth, and knowledge and experience in financial matters.

(55)(A) The term "security future" means a contract of sale for future delivery of a single security or of a narrow-based security index, including any interest therein or based on the value thereof, except an exempted security under paragraph (12) of this subsection as in effect on January 11, 1983 (other than any municipal security as defined in paragraph (29) of this subsection as in effect on January 11, 1983). The term "security future" does not include any agreement, contract, or transaction excluded from the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.] under section 2(c), 2(d), 2(f), or 2(g) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 2(c), (d), (f), (g)] (as in effect on December 21, 2000) or sections 27 to 27f of title 7.

(B) The term "narrow-based security index" means an index—

(i) that has 9 or fewer component securities;

(ii) in which a component security comprises more than 30 percent of the index's weighting;

(iii) in which the five highest weighted component securities in the aggregate comprise more than 60 percent of the index's weighting; or

(iv) in which the lowest weighted component securities comprising, in the aggregate, 25 percent of the index's weighting have an aggregate dollar value of average daily trading volume of less than \$50,000,000 (or in the case of an index with 15 or more component securities, \$30,000,000), except that if there are two or more securities with equal weighting that could be included in the calculation of the lowest weighted component securities comprising, in the aggregate, 25 percent of the index's weighting, such securities shall be ranked from lowest to highest dollar value of average daily trading volume and shall be included in the calculation based on their ranking starting with the lowest ranked security.

(C) Notwithstanding subparagraph (B), an index is not a narrow-based security index if—

(i)(I) it has at least nine component securities;

(II) no component security comprises more than 30 percent of the index's weighting; and

(III) each component security is—

(aa) registered pursuant to section 78l of this title;

(bb) one of 750 securities with the largest market capitalization; and

(cc) one of 675 securities with the largest dollar value of average daily trading volume;

(ii) a board of trade was designated as a contract market by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission with respect to a contract of sale for future delivery on the index, before December 21, 2000;

(iii)(I) a contract of sale for future delivery on the index traded on a designated contract market or registered derivatives transaction execution facility for at least 30 days as a contract of sale for future delivery on an index that was not a narrow-based security index; and

(II) it has been a narrow-based security index for no more than 45 business days over 3 consecutive calendar months;

(iv) a contract of sale for future delivery on the index is traded on or subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade and meets such requirements as are jointly established by rule or regulation by the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission;

(v) no more than 18 months have passed since December 21, 2000, and—

(I) it is traded on or subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade;

(II) the offer and sale in the United States of a contract of sale for future delivery on the index was authorized before December 21, 2000; and

(III) the conditions of such authorization continue to be met; or

(vi) a contract of sale for future delivery on the index is traded on or subject to the rules of a board of trade and meets such requirements as are jointly established by rule, regulation, or order by the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

(D) Within 1 year after December 21, 2000, the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission jointly shall adopt rules or regulations that set forth the requirements under clause (iv) of subparagraph (C).

(E) An index that is a narrow-based security index solely because it was a narrow-based security index for more than 45 business days over 3 consecutive calendar months pursuant to clause (iii) of subparagraph (C) shall not be a narrow-based security index for the 3 following calendar months.

(F) For purposes of subparagraphs (B) and (C) of this paragraph—

(i) the dollar value of average daily trading volume and the market capitalization shall be calculated as of the preceding 6 full calendar months; and

(ii) the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall, by rule or regulation, jointly specify the method to be used to determine market capitalization and dollar value of average daily trading volume.

(56) The term "security futures product" means a security future or any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security future.

(57)(A) The term "margin", when used with respect to a security futures product, means the amount, type, and form of collateral required to secure any extension or maintenance of credit, or the amount, type, and form of collateral required as a performance bond related to the purchase, sale, or carrying of a security futures product.

(B) The terms "margin level" and "level of margin", when used with respect to a security futures product, mean the amount of margin required to secure any extension or maintenance of credit, or the amount of margin required as a performance bond related to the purchase, sale, or carrying of a security futures product.

(C) The terms "higher margin level" and "higher level of margin", when used with respect to a security futures product, mean a margin level established by a national securities exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title that is higher than the minimum amount established and in effect pursuant to section 78g(c)(2)(B) of this title.

(58) AUDIT COMMITTEE.—The term "audit committee" means—

(A) a committee (or equivalent body) established by and amongst the board of directors of an issuer for the purpose of overseeing the accounting and financial reporting processes of the

issuer and audits of the financial statements of the issuer; and

(B) if no such committee exists with respect to an issuer, the entire board of directors of the issuer.

(59) REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM.—The term "registered public accounting firm" has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 [15 U.S.C. 7201].

(60) CREDIT RATING.—The term "credit rating" means an assessment of the creditworthiness of an obligor as an entity or with respect to specific securities or money market instruments.

(61) CREDIT RATING AGENCY.—The term "credit rating agency" means any person—

(A) engaged in the business of issuing credit ratings on the Internet or through another readily accessible means, for free or for a reasonable fee, but does not include a commercial credit reporting company;

(B) employing either a quantitative or qualitative model, or both, to determine credit ratings; and

(C) receiving fees from either issuers, investors, or other market participants, or a combination thereof.

(62) NATIONALLY RECOGNIZED STATISTICAL RATING ORGANIZATION.—The term "nationally recognized statistical rating organization" means a credit rating agency that—

(A) issues credit ratings certified by qualified institutional buyers, in accordance with section 78o–7(a)(1)(B)(ix) of this title, with respect to—

(i) financial institutions, brokers, or dealers;

(ii) insurance companies;

(iii) corporate issuers;

(iv) issuers of asset-backed securities (as that term is defined in section 1101(c) of part 229 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on September 29, 2006);

(v) issuers of government securities, municipal securities, or securities issued by a foreign government; or

(vi) a combination of one or more categories of obligors described in any of clauses (i) through (v); and

(B) is registered under section 78o–7 of this title.

(63) PERSON ASSOCIATED WITH A NATIONALLY RECOGNIZED STATISTICAL RATING ORGANIZATION.—The term "person associated with" a nationally recognized statistical rating organization means any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of a nationally recognized statistical rating organization (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions), any person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with a nationally recognized statistical rating organization, or any employee of a nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

(64) QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER.—The term "qualified institutional buyer" has the meaning given such term in section 230.144A(a) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, or any successor thereto.

(65) ELIGIBLE CONTRACT PARTICIPANT.—The term "eligible contract participant" has the same meaning as in section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1a).

(66) MAJOR SWAP PARTICIPANT.—The term "major swap participant" has the same meaning as in section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1a).

(67) MAJOR SECURITY-BASED SWAP PARTICIPANT.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term "major security-based swap participant" means any person—

(i) who is not a security-based swap dealer; and

(ii)(I) who maintains a substantial position in security-based swaps for any of the major security-based swap categories, as such categories are determined by the Commission, excluding both positions held for hedging or mitigating commercial risk and positions

maintained by any employee benefit plan (or any contract held by such a plan) as defined in paragraphs (3) and (32) of section 3 of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (29 U.S.C. 1002) for the primary purpose of hedging or mitigating any risk directly associated with the operation of the plan;

(II) whose outstanding security-based swaps create substantial counterparty exposure that could have serious adverse effects on the financial stability of the United States banking system or financial markets; or

(III) that is a financial entity that—

(aa) is highly leveraged relative to the amount of capital such entity holds and that is not subject to capital requirements established by an appropriate Federal banking agency; and

(bb) maintains a substantial position in outstanding security-based swaps in any major security-based swap category, as such categories are determined by the Commission.

(B) DEFINITION OF SUBSTANTIAL POSITION.—For purposes of subparagraph (A), the Commission shall define, by rule or regulation, the term "substantial position" at the threshold that the Commission determines to be prudent for the effective monitoring, management, and oversight of entities that are systemically important or can significantly impact the financial system of the United States. In setting the definition under this subparagraph, the Commission shall consider the person's relative position in uncleared as opposed to cleared security-based swaps and may take into consideration the value and quality of collateral held against counterparty exposures.

(C) SCOPE OF DESIGNATION.—For purposes of subparagraph (A), a person may be designated as a major security-based swap participant for 1 or more categories of security-based swaps without being classified as a major security-based swap participant for all classes of security-based swaps.

(68) SECURITY-BASED SWAP.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subparagraph (B), the term "security-based swap" means any agreement, contract, or transaction that—

(i) is a swap, as that term is defined under section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1a] (without regard to paragraph (47)(B)(x) of such section); and

(ii) is based on—

(I) an index that is a narrow-based security index, including any interest therein or on the value thereof;

(II) a single security or loan, including any interest therein or on the value thereof; or

(III) the occurrence, nonoccurrence, or extent of the occurrence of an event relating to a single issuer of a security or the issuers of securities in a narrow-based security index, provided that such event directly affects the financial statements, financial condition, or financial obligations of the issuer.

(B) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION REGARDING MASTER AGREEMENTS.—The term "security-based swap" shall be construed to include a master agreement that provides for an agreement, contract, or transaction that is a security-based swap pursuant to subparagraph (A), together with all supplements to any such master agreement, without regard to whether the master agreement contains an agreement, contract, or transaction that is not a security-based swap pursuant to subparagraph (A), except that the master agreement shall be considered to be a security-based swap only with respect to each agreement, contract, or transaction under the master agreement that is a security-based swap pursuant to subparagraph (A).

(C) EXCLUSIONS.—The term "security-based swap" does not include any agreement, contract, or transaction that meets the definition of a security-based swap only because such agreement, contract, or transaction references, is based upon, or settles through the transfer, delivery, or receipt of an exempted security under paragraph (12), as in effect on January 11, 1983 (other than any municipal security as defined in paragraph (29) as in effect on January 11,

1983), unless such agreement, contract, or transaction is of the character of, or is commonly known in the trade as, a put, call, or other option.

(D) MIXED SWAP.—The term "security-based swap" includes any agreement, contract, or transaction that is as described in subparagraph (A) and also is based on the value of 1 or more interest or other rates, currencies, commodities, instruments of indebtedness, indices, quantitative measures, other financial or economic interest or property of any kind (other than a single security or a narrow-based security index), or the occurrence, non-occurrence, or the extent of the occurrence of an event or contingency associated with a potential financial, economic, or commercial consequence (other than an event described in subparagraph (A)(ii)(III)).

(E) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION REGARDING USE OF THE TERM INDEX.—The term "index" means an index or group of securities, including any interest therein or based on the value thereof.

(69) SWAP.—The term "swap" has the same meaning as in section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1a).

(70) PERSON ASSOCIATED WITH A SECURITY-BASED SWAP DEALER OR MAJOR SECURITY-BASED SWAP PARTICIPANT.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term "person associated with a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant" or "associated person of a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant" means—

(i) any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of such security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions);

(ii) any person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with such security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant; or

(iii) any employee of such security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant.

(B) EXCLUSION.—Other than for purposes of section 78o–10(1)(2) of this title, the term "person associated with a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant" or "associated person of a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant" does not include any person associated with a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant whose functions are solely clerical or ministerial.

(71) SECURITY-BASED SWAP DEALER.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term "security-based swap dealer" means any person who—

(i) holds themselves out as a dealer in security-based swaps;

(ii) makes a market in security-based swaps;

(iii) regularly enters into security-based swaps with counterparties as an ordinary course of business for its own account; or

(iv) engages in any activity causing it to be commonly known in the trade as a dealer or market maker in security-based swaps.

(B) DESIGNATION BY TYPE OR CLASS.—A person may be designated as a security-based swap dealer for a single type or single class or category of security-based swap or activities and considered not to be a security-based swap dealer for other types, classes, or categories of security-based swaps or activities.

(C) EXCEPTION.—The term "security-based swap dealer" does not include a person that enters into security-based swaps for such person's own account, either individually or in a fiduciary capacity, but not as a part of regular business.

(D) DE MINIMIS EXCEPTION.—The Commission shall exempt from designation as a security-based swap dealer an entity that engages in a de minimis quantity of security-based

swap dealing in connection with transactions with or on behalf of its customers. The Commission shall promulgate regulations to establish factors with respect to the making of any determination to exempt.

(72) APPROPRIATE FEDERAL BANKING AGENCY.—The term "appropriate Federal banking agency" has the same meaning as in section 3(q) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(q)).

(73) BOARD.—The term "Board" means the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

(74) PRUDENTIAL REGULATOR.—The term "prudential regulator" has the same meaning as in section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1a).

(75) SECURITY-BASED SWAP DATA REPOSITORY.—The term "security-based swap data repository" means any person that collects and maintains information or records with respect to transactions or positions in, or the terms and conditions of, security-based swaps entered into by third parties for the purpose of providing a centralized recordkeeping facility for security-based swaps.

(76) SWAP DEALER.—The term "swap dealer" has the same meaning as in section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1a).

(77) SECURITY-BASED SWAP EXECUTION FACILITY.—The term "security-based swap execution facility" means a trading system or platform in which multiple participants have the ability to execute or trade security-based swaps by accepting bids and offers made by multiple participants in the facility or system, through any means of interstate commerce, including any trading facility, that—

- (A) facilitates the execution of security-based swaps between persons; and
- (B) is not a national securities exchange.

(78) SECURITY-BASED SWAP AGREEMENT.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—For purposes of sections 78i, 78j, 78p, 78t, and 78u–1 of this title, and section 17 of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77q), the term "security-based swap agreement" means a swap agreement as defined in section 206A of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act (15 U.S.C. 78c note) of which a material term is based on the price, yield, value, or volatility of any security or any group or index of securities, or any interest therein.

(B) EXCLUSIONS.—The term "security-based swap agreement" does not include any security-based swap.

(79) ASSET-BACKED SECURITY.—The term "asset-backed security"—

(A) means a fixed-income or other security collateralized by any type of self-liquidating financial asset (including a loan, a lease, a mortgage, or a secured or unsecured receivable) that allows the holder of the security to receive payments that depend primarily on cash flow from the asset, including—

- (i) a collateralized mortgage obligation;
- (ii) a collateralized debt obligation;
- (iii) a collateralized bond obligation;
- (iv) a collateralized debt obligation of asset-backed securities;
- (v) a collateralized debt obligation of collateralized debt obligations; and
- (vi) a security that the Commission, by rule, determines to be an asset-backed security for purposes of this section; and

(B) does not include a security issued by a finance subsidiary held by the parent company or a company controlled by the parent company, if none of the securities issued by the finance subsidiary are held by an entity that is not controlled by the parent company.

(80) ² EMERGING GROWTH COMPANY.—The term "emerging growth company" means an issuer that had total annual gross revenues of less than \$1,000,000,000 (as such amount is indexed

for inflation every 5 years by the Commission to reflect the change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics, setting the threshold to the nearest 1,000,000) during its most recently completed fiscal year. An issuer that is an emerging growth company as of the first day of that fiscal year shall continue to be deemed an emerging growth company until the earliest of—

(A) the last day of the fiscal year of the issuer during which it had total annual gross revenues of \$1,000,000,000 (as such amount is indexed for inflation every 5 years by the Commission to reflect the change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics, setting the threshold to the nearest 1,000,000) or more;

(B) the last day of the fiscal year of the issuer following the fifth anniversary of the date of the first sale of common equity securities of the issuer pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933;

(C) the date on which such issuer has, during the previous 3-year period, issued more than \$1,000,000,000 in non-convertible debt; or

(D) the date on which such issuer is deemed to be a "large accelerated filer", as defined in section 240.12b-2 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, or any successor thereto.

(80) ⁷ FUNDING PORTAL.—The term "funding portal" means any person acting as an intermediary in a transaction involving the offer or sale of securities for the account of others, solely pursuant to section 4(6) ¹ of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77d(6)), that does not—

(A) offer investment advice or recommendations;

(B) solicit purchases, sales, or offers to buy the securities offered or displayed on its website or portal;

(C) compensate employees, agents, or other persons for such solicitation or based on the sale of securities displayed or referenced on its website or portal;

(D) hold, manage, possess, or otherwise handle investor funds or securities; or

(E) engage in such other activities as the Commission, by rule, determines appropriate.

(b) Power to define technical, trade, accounting, and other terms

The Commission and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, as to matters within their respective jurisdictions, shall have power by rules and regulations to define technical, trade, accounting, and other terms used in this chapter, consistently with the provisions and purposes of this chapter.

(c) Application to governmental departments or agencies

No provision of this chapter shall apply to, or be deemed to include, any executive department or independent establishment of the United States, or any lending agency which is wholly owned, directly or indirectly, by the United States, or any officer, agent, or employee of any such department, establishment, or agency, acting in the course of his official duty as such, unless such provision makes specific reference to such department, establishment, or agency.

(d) Issuers of municipal securities

No issuer of municipal securities or officer or employee thereof acting in the course of his official duties as such shall be deemed to be a "broker", "dealer", or "municipal securities dealer" solely by reason of buying, selling, or effecting transactions in the issuer's securities.

(e) Charitable organizations

(1) Exemption

Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, but subject to paragraph (2) of this subsection, a charitable organization, as defined in section 3(c)(10)(D) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-3(c)(10)(D)], or any trustee, director, officer, employee, or volunteer of such a charitable organization acting within the scope of such person's employment or duties with such organization, shall not be deemed to be a "broker", "dealer", "municipal securities broker", "municipal securities dealer", "government securities broker", or "government securities

dealer" for purposes of this chapter solely because such organization or person buys, holds, sells, or trades in securities for its own account in its capacity as trustee or administrator of, or otherwise on behalf of or for the account of—

- (A) such a charitable organization;
- (B) a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-3(c)(10)(B)]; or
- (C) a trust or other donative instrument described in section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-3(c)(10)(B)], or the settlors (or potential settlors) or beneficiaries of any such trust or other instrument.

(2) Limitation on compensation

The exemption provided under paragraph (1) shall not be available to any charitable organization, or any trustee, director, officer, employee, or volunteer of such a charitable organization, unless each person who, on or after 90 days after December 8, 1995, solicits donations on behalf of such charitable organization from any donor to a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-3(c)(10)(B)], is either a volunteer or is engaged in the overall fund raising activities of a charitable organization and receives no commission or other special compensation based on the number or the value of donations collected for the fund.

(f) Consideration of promotion of efficiency, competition, and capital formation

Whenever pursuant to this chapter the Commission is engaged in rulemaking, or in the review of a rule of a self-regulatory organization, and is required to consider or determine whether an action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, the Commission shall also consider, in addition to the protection of investors, whether the action will promote efficiency, competition, and capital formation.

(g) Church plans

No church plan described in section 414(e) of title 26, no person or entity eligible to establish and maintain such a plan under title 26, no company or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-3(c)(14)], and no trustee, director, officer or employee of or volunteer for such plan, company, account, person, or entity, acting within the scope of that person's employment or activities with respect to such plan, shall be deemed to be a "broker", "dealer", "municipal securities broker", "municipal securities dealer", "government securities broker", "government securities dealer", "clearing agency", or "transfer agent" for purposes of this chapter—

(1) solely because such plan, company, person, or entity buys, holds, sells, trades in, or transfers securities or acts as an intermediary in making payments in connection with transactions in securities for its own account in its capacity as trustee or administrator of, or otherwise on behalf of, or for the account of, any church plan, company, or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-3(c)(14)]; and

(2) if no such person or entity receives a commission or other transaction-related sales compensation in connection with any activities conducted in reliance on the exemption provided by this subsection.

(h) Limited exemption for funding portals

(1) In general

The Commission shall, by rule, exempt, conditionally or unconditionally, a registered funding portal from the requirement to register as a broker or dealer under section 78o(a)(1) of this title, provided that such funding portal—

- (A) remains subject to the examination, enforcement, and other rulemaking authority of the Commission;
- (B) is a member of a national securities association registered under section 78o-3 of this

title; and

(C) is subject to such other requirements under this chapter as the Commission determines appropriate under such rule.

(2) National securities association membership

For purposes of sections 78o(b)(8) and 78o-3 of this title, the term "broker or dealer" includes a funding portal and the term "registered broker or dealer" includes a registered funding portal, except to the extent that the Commission, by rule, determines otherwise, provided that a national securities association shall only examine for and enforce against a registered funding portal rules of such national securities association written specifically for registered funding portals.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §3, 48 Stat. 882; Aug. 23, 1935, ch. 614, §203(a), 49 Stat. 704; Proc. No. 2695, eff. July 4, 1946, 11 F.R. 7517, 60 Stat. 1352; Pub. L. 86-70, §12(b), June 25, 1959, 73 Stat. 143; Pub. L. 86-624, §7(b), July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 412; Pub. L. 88-467, §2, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 565; Pub. L. 91-373, title IV, §401(b), Aug. 10, 1970, 84 Stat. 718; Pub. L. 91-547, §28(a), (b), Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1435; Pub. L. 91-567, §6(b), Dec. 22, 1970, 84 Stat. 1499; Pub. L. 94-29, §3, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 97; Pub. L. 95-283, §16, May 21, 1978, 92 Stat. 274; Pub. L. 96-477, title VII, §702, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2295; Pub. L. 97-303, §2, Oct. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1409; Pub. L. 98-376, §6(a), Aug. 10, 1984, 98 Stat. 1265; Pub. L. 98-440, title I, §101, Oct. 3, 1984, 98 Stat. 1689; Pub. L. 99-514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 99-571, title I, §102(a)-(d), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3214-3216; Pub. L. 100-181, title III, §§301-306, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1253, 1254; Pub. L. 100-704, §6(a), Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4681; Pub. L. 101-73, title VII, §744(u)(1), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 441; Pub. L. 101-429, title V, §503, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 952; Pub. L. 101-550, title II, §§203(b), 204, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2717, 2718; Pub. L. 103-202, title I, §§106(b)(2)(A), 109(a), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2350, 2352; Pub. L. 103-325, title II, §202, title III, §347(a), Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2198, 2241; Pub. L. 104-62, §4(a), (b), Dec. 8, 1995, 109 Stat. 684; Pub. L. 104-290, title I, §106(b), title V, §508(c), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3424, 3447; Pub. L. 105-353, title III, §301(b)(1)-(4), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3235, 3236; Pub. L. 106-102, title II, §§201, 202, 207, 208, 221(b), 231(b)(1), Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1385, 1390, 1394, 1395, 1401, 1406; Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §201], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A-413; Pub. L. 107-204, §2(b), title II, §205(a), title VI, §604(c)(1)(A), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 749, 773, 796; Pub. L. 108-359, §1(c)(1), Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1666; Pub. L. 108-386, §8(f)(1)-(3), Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2232; Pub. L. 108-447, div. H, title V, §520(1), Dec. 8, 2004, 118 Stat. 3267; Pub. L. 109-291, §3(a), Sept. 29, 2006, 120 Stat. 1328; Pub. L. 109-351, title I, §101(a)(1), title IV, §401(a)(1), (2), Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1968, 1971, 1972; Pub. L. 111-203, title III, §376(1), title VII, §761(a), title IX, §§932(b), 939(e), 941(a), 944(b), 985(b)(2), 986(a)(1), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1566, 1754, 1883, 1886, 1890, 1898, 1933, 1935; Pub. L. 112-106, title I, §101(b), title III, §304(a)(1), (b), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 307, 321, 322.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b), (c), (e)(1), (f), and (g), and (h)(1)(C), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Investment Company Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(B)(v), (19), (47), (51)(A)(iii), is title I of act Aug. 20, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 789, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§80a-1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80a-51 of this title and Tables.

Section 4(2), (5), and (6) of the Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(B)(vii)(I) and (80) defining "funding portal", was redesignated section 4(a)(2), (5), and (6), respectively, of that Act by Pub. L. 112-106, title II, §201(b)(1), (c)(1), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 314, and is classified to section 77d(a)(2), (5), and (6) of this title.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(B)(vii)(II), was in the original "this Act". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

Section 206 of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(B)(ix), (5)(C)(iv), (54)(B), is

section 206 of Pub. L. 106–102, which is set out as a note below.

Subsec. (e) of section 78o of this title, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(E), was redesignated (f) by Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §929X(c)(1), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1870.

Section 1462 of title 12, referred to in subsec. (a)(6)(A), (C), was amended by Pub. L. 111–203, title III, §369(2)(C), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1557, by redesignating pars. (4) and (5) as (2) and (3), respectively.

The Investment Advisers Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (a)(20), (47), is title II of act Aug. 20, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 847, which is classified generally to subchapter II (§80b–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80b–20 of this title and Tables.

Section 78w(b) of this title, referred to in subsec. (a)(26), was omitted from the Code.

Section 103 of title 26, referred to in subsec. (a)(29), which related to interest on certain governmental obligations, was amended generally by Pub. L. 99–514, title XIII, §1301(a), Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2602, and, as so amended, relates to interest on State and local bonds. Section 103(b)(2) (formerly section 103(c)(2)), which prior to the general amendment defined industrial development bond, relates to the applicability of the interest exclusion to arbitrage bonds.

The Federal Deposit Insurance Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(34)(D), (F)(iii), (H)(iii), is act Sept. 21, 1950, ch. 967, §2, 64 Stat. 873, which is classified generally to chapter 16 (§1811 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1811 of Title 12 and Tables.

The International Banking Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (a)(34)(G)(i) to (iii), (46)(B), is Pub. L. 95–369, Sept. 17, 1978, 92 Stat. 607, which enacted chapter 32 (§3101 et seq.) and sections 347d and 611a of Title 12, Banks and Banking, amended sections 72, 378, 614, 615, 618, 619, 1813, 1815, 1817, 1818, 1820, 1821, 1822, 1823, 1828, 1829b, 1831b, and 1841 of Title 12, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 247, 611a, and 3101 of Title 12 and formerly set out as notes under sections 36, 247, and 601 of Title 12. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3101 of Title 12 and Tables.

Section 25 of the Federal Reserve Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(34)(G)(ii), is classified to subchapter I (§601 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12, Banks and Banking. Section 25A of the Federal Reserve Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(34)(G)(ii), (H)(ii), is classified to subchapter II (§611 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12.

The Commodity Exchange Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(39)(B)(ii), (C), (55)(A), is act Sept. 21, 1922, ch. 369, 42 Stat. 998, which is classified generally to chapter 1 (§1 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1 of Title 7 and Tables.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (a)(47) and (80)(B) defining "emerging growth company", is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (a)(47), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, which is classified generally to this chapter (§78a et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, referred to in subsec. (a)(47), is Pub. L. 107–204, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 745. Section 2 of the Act enacted section 7201 of this title and amended this section. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7201 of this title and Tables.

The Trust Indenture Act of 1939, referred to in subsec. (a)(47), is title III of act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, as added Aug. 3, 1939, ch. 411, 53 Stat. 1149, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§77aaa et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77aaa of this title and Tables.

The Securities Investor Protection Act of 1970, referred to in subsec. (a)(47), is Pub. L. 91–598, Dec. 30, 1970, 84 Stat. 1636, which is classified generally to chapter 2B–1 (§78aaa et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78aaa of this title and Tables.

Section 301(d) of the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, referred to in subsec. (a)(54)(A)(iv), was classified to section 681(d) of this title and was repealed by Pub. L. 104–208, div. D, title II, §208(b)(3)(A), Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009–742.

The Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (a)(54)(A)(v), is Pub. L. 93–406, Sept. 2, 1974, 88 Stat. 832, which is classified principally to chapter 18 (§1001 et seq.) of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 29 and Tables.

Section 206A of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(78)(A), is section 206A of Pub. L. 106–102, which is set out as a note below.

Words "Philippine Islands" deleted from definition of term "State" in subsec. (a)(16) under authority of Proc. No. 2695, which granted independence to the Philippine Islands. Proc. No. 2695 was issued pursuant to section 1394 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse, and is set out as a note under that section.

AMENDMENTS

2012—Subsec. (a)(77), (79). Pub. L. 112–106, §101(b)(1), redesignated par. (77) defining "asset-backed security" as (79).

Subsec. (a)(80). Pub. L. 112–106, §304(b), added par. (80) defining "funding portal".

Pub. L. 112–106, §101(b)(2), added par. (80) defining "emerging growth company".

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 112–106, §304(a)(1), added subsec. (h).

2010—Subsec. (a)(4)(B)(vii)(I). Pub. L. 111–203, §944(b), substituted "4(5)" for "4(6)".

Subsec. (a)(5)(A), (B). Pub. L. 111–203, §761(a)(1), inserted "(not including security-based swaps, other than security-based swaps with or for persons that are not eligible contract participants)" after "securities".

Subsec. (a)(10). Pub. L. 111–203, §761(a)(2), inserted "security-based swap," after "security future,".

Subsec. (a)(13). Pub. L. 111–203, §761(a)(3), inserted at end "For security-based swaps, such terms include the execution, termination (prior to its scheduled maturity date), assignment, exchange, or similar transfer or conveyance of, or extinguishing of rights or obligations under, a security-based swap, as the context may require."

Subsec. (a)(14). Pub. L. 111–203, §761(a)(4), inserted at end "For security-based swaps, such terms include the execution, termination (prior to its scheduled maturity date), assignment, exchange, or similar transfer or conveyance of, or extinguishing of rights or obligations under, a security-based swap, as the context may require."

Subsec. (a)(34). Pub. L. 111–203, §376(1)(G), struck out ", and the term 'District of Columbia savings and loan association' means any association subject to examination and supervision by the Office of Thrift Supervision under section 1466a of title 12" after "section 1841 of title 12" in concluding provisions.

Subsec. (a)(34)(A)(i). Pub. L. 111–203, §376(1)(A)(i), substituted "a subsidiary or a department or division of any such bank, a Federal savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(2) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(2))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or a subsidiary or department or division of any such Federal savings association" for "or a subsidiary or a department or division of any such bank".

Subsec. (a)(34)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 111–203, §376(1)(A)(ii), substituted "a subsidiary or a department or division of such subsidiary, or a savings and loan holding company" for "or a subsidiary or a department or division of such subsidiary".

Subsec. (a)(34)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 111–203, §376(1)(A)(iii), substituted "a subsidiary or department or division of any such bank, a State savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(3) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(3))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or a subsidiary or a department or division of any such State savings association; and" for "or a subsidiary or department or division thereof;".

Subsec. (a)(34)(A)(iv), (v). Pub. L. 111–203, §376(1)(A)(iv), (v), redesignated cl. (v) as (iv) and struck out former cl. (iv) which read as follows: "the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association (as defined in section 3(b) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, a subsidiary or a department or division of any such savings association, or a savings and loan holding company; and".

Subsec. (a)(34)(B)(i). Pub. L. 111–203, §376(1)(B)(i), substituted "a subsidiary of any such bank, a Federal savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(2) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(2))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or a subsidiary of any such Federal savings association" for "or a subsidiary of any such bank".

Subsec. (a)(34)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 111–203, §376(1)(B)(ii), substituted "a subsidiary of a bank holding company that is a bank other than a bank specified in clause (i) or (iii) of this subparagraph, or a savings and loan holding company" for "or a subsidiary of a bank holding company which is a bank other than a bank specified in clause (i), (iii), or (iv) of this subparagraph".

Subsec. (a)(34)(B)(iii). Pub. L. 111–203, §376(1)(B)(iii), substituted "a subsidiary of any such bank, a State savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(3) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(3))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or a subsidiary of any such State savings association; and" for "or a subsidiary thereof;".

Subsec. (a)(34)(B)(iv), (v). Pub. L. 111–203, §376(1)(B)(iv), (v), redesignated cl. (v) as (iv) and struck out former cl. (iv) which read as follows: "the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association (as defined in section 3(b) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b))), the deposits

of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or a subsidiary of any such savings association, or a savings and loan holding company; and".

Subsec. (a)(34)(C)(i). Pub. L. 111-203, §376(1)(C)(i), inserted "or a Federal savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(2) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(2))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation" after "bank".

Subsec. (a)(34)(C)(ii). Pub. L. 111-203, §376(1)(C)(ii), substituted "a subsidiary of a bank holding company that is a bank other than a bank specified in clause (i) or (iii) of this subparagraph, or a savings and loan holding company" for "or a subsidiary of a bank holding company which is a bank other than a bank specified in clause (i), (iii), or (iv) of this subparagraph".

Subsec. (a)(34)(C)(iii). Pub. L. 111-203, §376(1)(C)(iii), inserted "or a State savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(3) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(3))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation; and" after "System)".

Subsec. (a)(34)(C)(iv), (v). Pub. L. 111-203, §376(1)(C)(iv), (v), redesignated cl. (v) as (iv) and struck out former cl. (iv) which read as follows: "the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association (as defined in section 3(b) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, a savings and loan holding company, or a subsidiary of a savings and loan holding company when the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency is not the Commission; and".

Subsec. (a)(34)(D)(i). Pub. L. 111-203, §376(1)(D)(i), inserted "or a Federal savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(2) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(2))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation" after "bank".

Subsec. (a)(34)(D)(ii) to (iv). Pub. L. 111-203, §376(1)(D)(ii)-(v), in cl. (ii), inserted "and" at end, redesignated cl. (iv) as (iii), in cl. (iii), inserted "or a State savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(3) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(3))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation" after "bank", and struck out former cl. (iii) which read as follows: "the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association (as defined in section 3(b) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b))) the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation; and".

Subsec. (a)(34)(F)(i). Pub. L. 111-203, §376(1)(E)(i), inserted "or a Federal savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(2) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(2))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation" after "bank".

Subsec. (a)(34)(F)(ii) to (v). Pub. L. 111-203, §376(1)(E)(ii)-(iv), redesignated cls. (iii) to (v) as (ii) to (iv), respectively, in cl. (iii), inserted "or a State savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(3) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(3))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation" before semicolon, and struck out former cl. (ii) which read as follows: "the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association (as defined in section 3(b) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation; and".

Subsec. (a)(34)(G)(i). Pub. L. 111-203, §376(1)(F)(i), inserted ", a Federal savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(2) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation," after "national bank".

Subsec. (a)(34)(G)(iii). Pub. L. 111-203, §376(1)(F)(ii), inserted ", a State savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(3) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation," after "savings bank)" and inserted "and" at end.

Subsec. (a)(34)(G)(iv), (v). Pub. L. 111-203, §376(1)(F)(iii), (iv), redesignated cl. (v) as (iv) and struck out former cl. (iv) which read as follows: "the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association (as defined in section 3(b) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act) the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;".

Subsec. (a)(39)(B)(i)(I). Pub. L. 111-203, §761(a)(5)(A)(i), substituted "government securities dealer, security-based swap dealer, or major security-based swap participant" for "or government securities dealer".

Subsec. (a)(39)(B)(i)(II). Pub. L. 111-203, §761(a)(5)(A)(ii), inserted "security-based swap dealer, major security-based swap participant," after "government securities dealer,".

Subsec. (a)(39)(C). Pub. L. 111-203, §761(a)(5)(B), substituted "government securities dealer, security-based swap dealer, or major security-based swap participant" for "or government securities dealer".

Subsec. (a)(39)(D). Pub. L. 111-203, §761(a)(5)(C), inserted "security-based swap dealer, major security-based swap participant," after "government securities dealer,".

Subsec. (a)(41). Pub. L. 111-203, §939(e)(1), substituted "meets standards of credit-worthiness as established by the Commission" for "is rated in one of the two highest rating categories by at least one

nationally recognized statistical rating organization" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(47). Pub. L. 111-203, §986(a)(1), struck out "the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935," before "the Trust Indenture Act of 1939".

Subsec. (a)(53)(A). Pub. L. 111-203, §939(e)(2), substituted "meets standards of credit-worthiness as established by the Commission" for "is rated in 1 of the 4 highest rating categories by at least 1 nationally recognized statistical rating organization" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (a)(55)(A). Pub. L. 111-203, §985(b)(2)(A), made technical amendment to reference in original act which appears in text as reference to paragraph (12) of this subsection.

Subsec. (a)(62). Pub. L. 111-203, §932(b), redesignated subpars. (B) and (C) as (A) and (B), respectively, and struck out former subpar. (A) which read as follows: "has been in business as a credit rating agency for at least the 3 consecutive years immediately preceding the date of its application for registration under section 78o-7 of this title;".

Subsec. (a)(65) to (76). Pub. L. 111-203, §761(a)(6), added pars. (65) to (76).

Subsec. (a)(77). Pub. L. 111-203, §941(a), which directed amendment of subsec. (a) by adding par. (77) relating to asset-backed security "at the end", was executed by making the addition after par. (78) to reflect the probable intent of Congress. See Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note below.

Pub. L. 111-203, §761(a)(6), added par. (77) relating to security-based swap execution facility.

Subsec. (a)(78). Pub. L. 111-203, §761(a)(6), added par. (78).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111-203, §985(b)(2)(B), substituted "account, person" for "account person" in introductory provisions.

2006—Subsec. (a)(4)(F). Pub. L. 109-351, §101(a)(1), added subpar. (F).

Subsec. (a)(6)(A). Pub. L. 109-351, §401(a)(1)(A), inserted "or a Federal savings association, as defined in section 1462(5) of title 12" after "a banking institution organized under the laws of the United States".

Subsec. (a)(6)(C). Pub. L. 109-351, §401(a)(1)(B), inserted "or savings association, as defined in section 1462(4) of title 12" after "other banking institution" and "or savings associations" after "having supervision over banks".

Subsec. (a)(34). Pub. L. 109-351, §401(a)(2)(G), inserted at end of concluding provisions "As used in this paragraph, the term 'savings and loan holding company' has the same meaning as in section 1467a(a) of title 12."

Subsec. (a)(34)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 109-351, §401(a)(2)(A)(i), substituted "clause (i), (iii), or (iv)" for "clause (i) or (iii)".

Subsec. (a)(34)(A)(iv), (v). Pub. L. 109-351, §401(a)(2)(A)(ii)-(iv), added cl. (iv) and redesignated former cl. (iv) as (v).

Subsec. (a)(34)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 109-351, §401(a)(2)(B)(i), substituted "clause (i), (iii), or (iv)" for "clause (i) or (iii)".

Subsec. (a)(34)(B)(iv), (v). Pub. L. 109-351, §401(a)(2)(B)(ii)-(iv), added cl. (iv) and redesignated former cl. (iv) as (v).

Subsec. (a)(34)(C)(ii). Pub. L. 109-351, §401(a)(2)(C)(i), substituted "clause (i), (iii), or (iv)" for "clause (i) or (iii)".

Subsec. (a)(34)(C)(iv), (v). Pub. L. 109-351, §401(a)(2)(C)(ii)-(iv), added cl. (iv) and redesignated former cl. (iv) as (v).

Subsec. (a)(34)(D)(iii), (iv). Pub. L. 109-351, §401(a)(2)(D), added cl. (iii) and redesignated former cl. (iii) as (iv).

Subsec. (a)(34)(F)(ii) to (v). Pub. L. 109-351, §401(a)(2)(E), added cl. (ii) and redesignated former cls. (ii) to (iv) as (iii) to (v), respectively.

Subsec. (a)(34)(H). Pub. L. 109-351, §401(a)(2)(F), moved subpar. (H) and inserted it immediately after subpar. (G).

Subsec. (a)(60) to (64). Pub. L. 109-291 added pars. (60) to (64).

2004—Subsec. (a)(12)(C)(iv). Pub. L. 108-359 added cl. (iv).

Subsec. (a)(34)(A)(i), (B)(i), (C)(i), (D)(i), (F)(i). Pub. L. 108-386, §8(f)(1), struck out "or a bank operating under the Code of Law for the District of Columbia" after "national bank".

Subsec. (a)(34)(G)(i). Pub. L. 108-386, §8(f)(2), struck out ", a bank in the District of Columbia examined by the Comptroller of the Currency," after "national bank".

Subsec. (a)(34)(H)(i). Pub. L. 108-386, §8(f)(3), struck out "or a bank in the District of Columbia examined by the Comptroller of the Currency" after "national bank".

Subsec. (a)(42)(B). Pub. L. 108-447 inserted "by the Tennessee Valley Authority or" after "issued or guaranteed".

2002—Subsec. (a)(39)(F). Pub. L. 107-204, §604(c)(1)(A), inserted ", or is subject to an order or finding,"

before "enumerated" and substituted "(H), or (G)" for "or (G)".

Subsec. (a)(47). Pub. L. 107-204, §2(b), inserted "the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002," before "the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935".

Subsec. (a)(58), (59). Pub. L. 107-204, §205(a), added pars. (58) and (59).

2000—Subsec. (a)(10). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §201(1)], inserted "security future," after "treasury stock,".

Subsec. (a)(11). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §201(2)], added par. (11) and struck out former par. (11) which read as follows: "The term 'equity security' means any stock or similar security; or any security convertible, with or without consideration, into such a security, or carrying any warrant or right to subscribe to or purchase such a security; or any such warrant or right; or any other security which the Commission shall deem to be of similar nature and consider necessary or appropriate, by such rules and regulations as it may prescribe in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to treat as an equity security."

Subsec. (a)(13), (14). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §201(3), (4)], inserted at end "For security futures products, such term includes any contract, agreement, or transaction for future delivery."

Subsec. (a)(55) to (57). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §201(5)], added pars. (55) to (57).

1999—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 106-102, §201, inserted heading and amended text of par. (4) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The term 'broker' means any person engaged in the business of effecting transactions in securities for the account of others, but does not include a bank."

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 106-102, §202, inserted heading and amended text of par. (5) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The term 'dealer' means any person engaged in the business of buying and selling securities for his own account, through a broker or otherwise, but does not include a bank, or any person insofar as he buys or sells securities for his own account, either individually or in some fiduciary capacity, but not as a part of a regular business."

Subsec. (a)(12)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 106-102, §221(b), amended cl. (iii) generally. Prior to amendment, cl. (iii) read as follows: "any interest or participation in any common trust fund or similar fund maintained by a bank exclusively for the collective investment and reinvestment of assets contributed thereto by such bank in its capacity as trustee, executor, administrator, or guardian;".

Subsec. (a)(34)(H). Pub. L. 106-102, §231(b)(1), added subpar. (H) at end of par. (34).

Subsec. (a)(42)(E). Pub. L. 106-102, §208, added subpar. (E).

Subsec. (a)(54). Pub. L. 106-102, §207, added par. (54).

1998—Subsec. (a)(10). Pub. L. 105-353, §301(b)(1), substituted "deposit for" for "deposit, for".

Subsec. (a)(12)(A)(vi). Pub. L. 105-353, §301(b)(2), realigned margins.

Subsec. (a)(22)(A). Pub. L. 105-353, §301(b)(3), substituted "section 153" for "section 153(h)" and for "section 153(t)".

Subsec. (a)(39)(B)(i). Pub. L. 105-353, §301(b)(4), substituted "of the Commission" for "to the Commission" in introductory provisions.

1996—Subsec. (a)(12)(A)(vi), (vii). Pub. L. 104-290, §508(c)(1), added cl. (vi) and redesignated former cl. (vi) as (vii).

Subsecs. (f), (g). Pub. L. 104-290, §§106(b), 508(c)(2), added subsecs. (f) and (g), respectively.

1995—Subsec. (a)(12)(A)(iv) to (vi). Pub. L. 104-62, §4(a), struck out "and" at end of cl. (iv), added cl. (v), and redesignated former cl. (v) as (vi).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104-62, §4(b), added subsec. (e).

1994—Subsec. (a)(41)(A)(i). Pub. L. 103-325, §347(a), substituted "on a residential" for "or on a residential" and inserted before semicolon ", or on one or more parcels of real estate upon which is located one or more commercial structures".

Subsec. (a)(53). Pub. L. 103-325, §202, added par. (53).

1993—Subsec. (a)(12)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 103-202, §106(b)(2)(A), substituted "sections 78o and 78q-1" for "sections 78o, 78o-3 (other than subsection (g)(3)), and 78q-1".

Subsec. (a)(34)(G)(ii) to (iv). Pub. L. 103-202, §109(a)(1), amended cls. (ii) to (iv) generally. Prior to amendment, cls. (ii) to (iv) read as follows:

"(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the case of a State member bank of the Federal Reserve System, a foreign bank, a State branch or a State agency of a foreign bank, or a commercial lending company owned or controlled by a foreign bank (as such terms are used in the International Banking Act of 1978);

"(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of a bank insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than a member of the Federal Reserve System or a Federal savings bank);

"(iv) the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;".

Subsec. (a)(46). Pub. L. 103-202, §109(a)(2), amended par. (46) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (46) read as follows: "The term 'financial institution' means (A) a bank (as such term is defined in paragraph (6) of this subsection), (B) a foreign bank, and (C) an insured institution (as such term is defined in section 1724 of title 12)."

Subsec. (a)(52). Pub. L. 103-202, §109(a)(3), redesignated par. (51) defining "foreign financial regulatory authority" as (52).

1990—Subsec. (a)(39)(A). Pub. L. 101-550, §203(b)(1), inserted "foreign equivalent of a self-regulatory organization, foreign or international securities exchange," after "self-regulatory organization," "or any substantially equivalent foreign statute or regulation," after "(7 U.S.C. 7)," and "(7 U.S.C. 21)," and "or foreign equivalent" after "contract market".

Subsec. (a)(39)(B). Pub. L. 101-550, §203(b)(2), added subpar. (B) and struck out former subpar. (B) which read as follows: "is subject to an order of the Commission or other appropriate regulatory agency denying, suspending for a period not exceeding twelve months, or revoking his registration as a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer, or barring or suspending for a period not exceeding 12 months his being associated with a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer, or is subject to an order of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission denying, suspending, or revoking his registration under the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.);".

Subsec. (a)(39)(D). Pub. L. 101-550, §203(b)(4), added subpar. (D). Former subpar. (D) redesignated (E).

Subsec. (a)(39)(E). Pub. L. 101-550, §203(b)(3), (5), redesignated subpar. (D) as (E) and substituted "(A), (B), (C), or (D)" for "(A), (B), or (C)". Former subpar. (E) redesignated (F).

Subsec. (a)(39)(F). Pub. L. 101-550, §203(b)(3), (6), redesignated subpar. (E) as (F), substituted "(D), (E), or (G)" for "(D) or (E)", and inserted "or any other felony" before "within ten years".

Subsec. (a)(51). Pub. L. 101-550, §204, added par. (51) defining "foreign financial regulatory authority".

Pub. L. 101-429 added par. (51) defining "penny stock".

1989—Subsec. (a)(34). Pub. L. 101-73, §744(u)(1)(B), substituted "Office of Thrift Supervision" for "Federal Home Loan Bank Board" in concluding provisions.

Subsec. (a)(34)(G)(iv) to (vi). Pub. L. 101-73, §744(u)(1)(A), added cl. (iv), redesignated cl. (vi) as (v), and struck out former cls. (iv) and (v) which read as follows:

"(iv) the Federal Home Loan Bank Board, in the case of a Federal savings and loan association, Federal savings bank, or District of Columbia savings and loan association;

"(v) the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation, in the case of an institution insured by the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation (other than a Federal savings and loan association, Federal savings bank, or District of Columbia savings and loan association);".

1988—Subsec. (a)(50). Pub. L. 100-704 added par. (50).

1987—Subsec. (a)(6)(C). Pub. L. 100-181, §301, substituted "under the authority of the Comptroller of the Currency pursuant to section 92a of title 12" for "under section 11(k) of the Federal Reserve Act, as amended".

Subsec. (a)(16). Pub. L. 100-181, §302, struck out reference to Canal Zone.

Subsec. (a)(22)(B). Pub. L. 100-181, §303, substituted "association, or any" and "own behalf, in" for "association or any" and "own behalf in", respectively.

Subsec. (a)(34)(C)(ii). Pub. L. 100-181, §304, substituted "State" for "state".

Subsec. (a)(39)(B). Pub. L. 100-181, §305, substituted "months, or revoking" for "months, revoking" and "barring or suspending for a period not exceeding 12 months his" for "barring his".

Subsec. (a)(47). Pub. L. 100-181, §306(1), added par. (47).

Subsec. (a)(49). Pub. L. 100-181, §306(2), added par. (49).

1986—Subsec. (a)(12). Pub. L. 99-571, §102(a), in amending par. (12) generally, expanded definition of "exempted security" or "exempted securities" to include government securities as defined in par. (42) of this subsection, provided that such securities not be deemed exempt for purposes of section 78q-1 of this title, substituted section 78o-3(g)(3) of this title for section 78o-3(b)(6), (11), and (g)(2) of this title in provision relating to municipal securities as not being "exempted securities" and defined "qualified plan" to mean qualified stock bonus, pension, or profit-sharing plan, qualified annuity plan, or governmental plan.

Pub. L. 99-514 substituted "Internal Revenue Code of 1986" for "Internal Revenue Code of 1954", which for purposes of codification was translated as "title 26" thus requiring no change in text.

Subsec. (a)(29). Pub. L. 99-514 substituted "Internal Revenue Code of 1986" for "Internal Revenue Code of 1954", which for purposes of codification was translated as "title 26" thus requiring no change in text.

Subsec. (a)(34). Pub. L. 99-571, §102(b)(2), inserted ", and the term 'District of Columbia savings and loan association' means any association subject to examination and supervision by the Federal Home Loan Bank

Board under section 1466a of title 12" in concluding provisions.

Subsec. (a)(34)(G). Pub. L. 99-571, §102(b)(1), added subpar. (G).

Subsec. (a)(39)(B). Pub. L. 99-571, §102(c)(1)(A), which directed insertion of "or other appropriate regulatory agency" after "Commission" was executed by making the insertion after "Commission" the first place appearing as the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 99-571, §102(c)(1)(B), substituted "municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer" for "or municipal securities dealer" in two places.

Subsec. (a)(39)(C). Pub. L. 99-571, §102(c)(2), substituted "municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer" for "or municipal securities dealer" and inserted ", an appropriate regulatory agency," after "the Commission".

Subsec. (a)(42) to (46), (48). Pub. L. 99-571, §102(d), added pars. (42) to (46) and (48).

1984—Subsec. (a)(39)(A). Pub. L. 98-376, §6(a)(1), inserted ", contract market designated pursuant to section 5 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 7), or futures association registered under section 17 of such Act (7 U.S.C. 21), or has been and is denied trading privileges on any such contract market".

Subsec. (a)(39)(B). Pub. L. 98-376, §6(a)(2), inserted ", or is subject to an order of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission denying, suspending, or revoking his registration under the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.)".

Subsec. (a)(39)(C). Pub. L. 98-376, §6(a)(3), inserted "or while associated with an entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act,".

Subsec. (a)(41). Pub. L. 98-440 added par. (41).

1982—Subsec. (a)(10). Pub. L. 97-303 inserted "any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security, certificate of deposit, or group or index of securities (including any interest therein or based on the value thereof), or any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege entered into on a national securities exchange relating to foreign currency," after "for a security,".

1980—Subsec. (a)(12). Pub. L. 96-477 included within definition of "exempted security" interests or participation in single trust funds, provided that qualifying interests, participation, or securities could be issued in connection with certain governmental plans as defined in section 414(d) of title 26, substituted provisions relating to securities arising out of contracts issued by insurance companies for provisions relating to separate accounts maintained by insurance companies, and excluded from definition of "exempted security" any plans described in cls. (A), (B), or (C) of par. (12) which were funded by annuity contracts described in section 403(b) of title 26.

1978—Subsec. (a)(40). Pub. L. 95-283 added par. (40).

1975—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 94-29, §3(1), redefined term "member" to recognize the elimination of fixed commission rates in the case of exchanges, inserted definition of term when used in the case of registered securities associations, expanded definition of term when used with respect to an exchange to include any natural person permitted to effect transactions on the floor of an exchange without the services of another person acting as broker, any registered broker or dealer with which such natural person is associated, any registered broker or dealer permitted to designate a natural person as its representative on the floor of an exchange, and any other registered broker or dealer which agrees to be regulated by an exchange and with respect to whom the exchange has undertaken to enforce compliance with its rules, this chapter, and the rules and regulations thereunder, introduced the concept of including among members any person required to comply with the rules of an exchange to the extent specified by the Commission in accordance with section 78f(f) of this title, and expanded definition of term when used with respect to a registered securities association to include any broker or dealer who has agreed to be regulated and with respect to whom the association undertakes to enforce compliance with its own rules, this chapter, and the rules and regulations thereunder.

Subsec. (a)(9). Pub. L. 94-29, §3(2), substituted "a natural person, company, government, or political subdivision, agency, or instrumentality of a government" for "an individual, a corporation, a partnership, an association, a joint-stock company, a business trust, or an unincorporated organization".

Subsec. (a)(12). Pub. L. 94-29, §3(3), brought brokers and dealers engaged exclusively in municipal securities business within the registration provisions of this chapter by transferring the existing description of municipal securities to subsec. (a)(29) and by inserting in its place provisions revoking the exempt status of municipal securities for purposes of sections 78o, 78o-3 (except subsections (b)(6), (b)(11), and (g)(2) thereof) and 78q-1 of this title.

Subsec. (a)(17). Pub. L. 94-29, §3(4), expanded definition of "interstate commerce" to establish that the intrastate use of any facility of an exchange, any telephones or other interstate means of communication, or any other interstate instrumentality constitutes a use of the jurisdictional means for purposes of this chapter.

Subsec. (a)(18). Pub. L. 94-29, §3(4), expanded definition to include persons under common control with

the broker or dealer and struck out references to the classification of the persons, including employees, controlled by a broker or a dealer.

Subsec. (a)(19). Pub. L. 94-29, §3(4), substituted " 'separate account', and 'company' " for "and 'separate account'."

Subsec. (a)(21). Pub. L. 94-29, §3(5), broadened definition of term "person associated with a member" to encompass a person associated with a broker or dealer which is a member of an exchange by restating directly the definition of a "person associated with a broker or dealer" in subsec. (a)(18).

Subsec. (a)(22) to (39). Pub. L. 94-29, §3(6), added pars. (22) to (39).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-29, §3(7), substituted "accounting, and other terms used in this chapter, consistently with the provisions and purposes of this chapter" for "and accounting terms used in this chapter insofar as such definitions are not inconsistent with the provisions of this chapter".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94-29, §3(8), added subsec. (d).

1970—Subsec. (a)(12). Pub. L. 91-567 inserted provisions which brought within definition of "exempted security" any security which is an industrial development bond the interest on which is excludable from gross income under section 103(a)(1) of title 26 if, by reason of the application of section 103(c)(4) or (6) of title 26, section 103(c)(1) does not apply to such security. Such amendment was also made by Pub. L. 91-373.

Pub. L. 91-547, §28(a), struck out reference to industrial development bonds the interest on which is excludable from gross income under section 103(a)(1) of title 26; and included as exempted securities interests or participations in common trust funds maintained by a bank for collective investment of assets held by it in a fiduciary capacity; interests or participations in bank collective trust funds maintained for funding of employees' stock-bonus, pension, or profit-sharing plans; interests or participations in separate accounts maintained by insurance companies for funding certain stock-bonus, pension, or profit-sharing plans which meet the requirements for qualification under section 401 of title 26; and such other securities as the Commission by rules and regulations deems necessary in the public interest.

Pub. L. 91-373 inserted provisions which brought within definition of "exempted security" any security which is an industrial development bond the interest on which is excludable from gross income under section 103(a)(1) of title 26 if, by reason of the application of section 103(c)(4) or (6) of title 26, section 103(c)(1) does not apply to such security. Such amendment was also made by Pub. L. 91-567.

Subsec. (a)(19). Pub. L. 91-547, §28(b), provided for term "separate account" the same meaning as in the Investment Company Act of 1940.

1964—Subsec. (a)(18) to (21). Pub. L. 88-467 added pars. (18) to (21).

1960—Subsec. (a)(16). Pub. L. 86-624 struck out reference to Hawaii.

1959—Subsec. (a)(16). Pub. L. 86-70 struck out reference to Alaska.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CHANGE OF NAME

Act Aug. 23, 1935, substituted "Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System" for "Federal Reserve Board".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2012 AMENDMENT

Notwithstanding subsec. (a)(80) of this section, issuer not to be an emerging growth company for purposes of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.) and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.) if the first sale of common equity securities of such issuer pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933 occurred on or before Dec. 8, 2011, see section 101(d) of Pub. L. 112-106, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 932(b), 941(a), 944(b), 985(b)(2), and 986(a)(1) of Pub. L. 111-203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111-203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 376(1) of Pub. L. 111-203 effective on the transfer date, see section 351 of Pub. L. 111-203, set out as a note under section 906 of Title 2, The Congress.

Amendment by section 761(a) of Pub. L. 111-203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761-774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111-203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111-203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

Amendment by section 939(e) of Pub. L. 111-203 effective 2 years after July 21, 2010, see section 939(g)

of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 24a of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2004 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 108–386 effective Oct. 30, 2004, and, except as otherwise provided, applicable with respect to fiscal year 2005 and each succeeding fiscal year, see sections 8(i) and 9 of Pub. L. 108–386, set out as notes under section 321 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1999 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 201, 202, 207, and 208 of Pub. L. 106–102 effective at the end of the 18-month period beginning on Nov. 12, 1999, see section 209 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 1828 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 221(b) of Pub. L. 106–102 effective 18 months after Nov. 12, 1999, see section 225 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–62 applicable as defense to any claim in administrative and judicial actions pending on or commenced after Dec. 8, 1995, that any person, security, interest, or participation of type described in Pub. L. 104–62 is subject to the Securities Act of 1933, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Investment Company Act of 1940, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, or any State statute or regulation preempted as provided in section 80a–3a of this title, except as specifically provided in such statutes, see section 7 of Pub. L. 104–62, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 347(a) of Pub. L. 103–325 effective upon date of promulgation of final regulations under section 347(c) of Pub. L. 103–325, see section 347(d) of Pub. L. 103–325, set out as an Effective Date of 1994 Amendment note under section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective 12 months after Oct. 15, 1990, with provision to commence rulemaking proceedings to implement such amendment not later than 180 days after Oct. 15, 1990, and with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(2), (3)(A), (C) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100–704, except for amendment by section 6, not applicable to actions occurring before Nov. 19, 1988, see section 9 of Pub. L. 100–704, set out as a note under section 78o of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99–571 effective 270 days after Oct. 28, 1986, see section 401 of Pub. L. 99–571, set out as an Effective Date note under section 78o–5 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 98–376, §7, Aug. 10, 1984, 98 Stat. 1266, provided that: "The amendments made by this Act [amending this section and sections 78o, 78t, 78u, and 78ff of this title] shall become effective immediately upon enactment of this Act [Aug. 10, 1984]."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, except for amendment of subsec. (a)(12) by Pub. L. 94–29 to be effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, with provisions of subsec. (a)(3), as amended by Pub. L. 94–29, or rules or regulations thereunder, not to apply in a way so as to deprive any person of membership in any national securities exchange (or its successor) of which such person was, on June 4, 1975, a member or a member firm as defined in the constitution of such exchange, or so as to deny membership in any such exchange (or its successor) to any natural person who is or becomes associated with such member or member firm, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1970 AMENDMENTS

For effective date of amendment by Pub. L. 91–567, see section 6(d) of Pub. L. 91–567, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

For effective date of amendment by Pub. L. 91-373, see section 401(c) of Pub. L. 91-373, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 88-467, §13, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 580, provided that: "The amendments made by this Act shall take effect as follows:

"(1) The effective date of section 12(g)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as added by section 3(c) of this Act [section 78l(g)(1) of this title], shall be July 1, 1964.

"(2) The effective date of the amendments to sections 12(b) and 15(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [sections 78l(b) and 78o(a) of this title], contained in sections 3(a) and 6(a), respectively, of this Act shall be July 1, 1964.

"(3) All other amendments contained in this Act [amending this section and sections 77d, 78l, 78m, 78n, 78o, 78o-3, 78p, 78t, 78w, and 78ff of this title] shall take effect on the date of its enactment [Aug. 20, 1964]."

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 109-351, title I, §101(a)(2)-(c), Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1968, provided that:

"(2) **TIMING.**—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 13, 2006], the Securities and Exchange Commission (in this section [enacting this note and amending 15 U.S.C. 78c] referred to as the 'Commission') and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (hereafter in this section referred to as the 'Board') shall jointly issue a proposed single set of rules or regulations to define the term 'broker' in accordance with section 3(a)(4) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(4)], as amended by this subsection.

"(3) **RULEMAKING SUPERSEDES PREVIOUS RULEMAKING.**—A final single set of rules or regulations jointly adopted in accordance with this section shall supersede any other proposed or final rule issued by the Commission on or after the date of enactment of section 201 of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act [Nov. 12, 1999] with regard to the exceptions to the definition of a broker under section 3(a)(4)(B) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. No such other rule, whether or not issued in final form, shall have any force or effect on or after that date of enactment.

"(b) **CONSULTATION.**—Prior to jointly adopting the single set of final rules or regulations required by this section, the Commission and the Board shall consult with and seek the concurrence of the Federal banking agencies concerning the content of such rulemaking in implementing section 3(a)(4)(B) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(4)(B)], as amended by this section and section 201 of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act [Pub. L. 106-102].

"(c) **DEFINITION.**—For purposes of this section, the term 'Federal banking agencies' means the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency, the Office of Thrift Supervision, and the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation."

CONSTRUCTION OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103-202 not to be construed to govern initial issuance of any public debt obligation or to grant any authority to (or extend any authority of) the Securities and Exchange Commission, any appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization to prescribe any procedure, term, or condition of such initial issuance, to promulgate any rule or regulation governing such initial issuance, or to otherwise regulate in any manner such initial issuance, see section 111 of Pub. L. 103-202, set out as a note under section 78o-5 of this title.

RULEMAKING

Pub. L. 112-106, title III, §304(a)(2), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 322, provided that: "The [Securities and Exchange] Commission shall issue a rule to carry out section 3(h) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c[(h)]), as added by this subsection, not later than 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 5, 2012]."

OPT-IN RIGHT FOR EMERGING GROWTH COMPANIES

Pub. L. 112-106, title I, §107, Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 312, provided that:

"(a) **IN GENERAL.**—With respect to an exemption provided to emerging growth companies under this title [amending this section and sections 77b, 77e to 77g, 78k-1, 78m, 78n, 78n-1, 78o-6, 7213, and 7262 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 77b, 77g, and 78o-6 of this title, and

amending provisions set out as a note under section 78l of this title], or an amendment made by this title, an emerging growth company may choose to forgo such exemption and instead comply with the requirements that apply to an issuer that is not an emerging growth company.

"(b) SPECIAL RULE.—Notwithstanding subsection (a), with respect to the extension of time to comply with new or revised financial accounting standards provided under section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77g(a)(2)(B)] and section 13(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78m(a)], as added by section 102(b), if an emerging growth company chooses to comply with such standards to the same extent that a non-emerging growth company is required to comply with such standards, the emerging growth company—

"(1) must make such choice at the time the company is first required to file a registration statement, periodic report, or other report with the [Securities and Exchange] Commission under section 13 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78m] and notify the Securities and Exchange Commission of such choice;

"(2) may not select some standards to comply with in such manner and not others, but must comply with all such standards to the same extent that a non-emerging growth company is required to comply with such standards; and

"(3) must continue to comply with such standards to the same extent that a non-emerging growth company is required to comply with such standards for as long as the company remains an emerging growth company."

STATE OPT OUT

Pub. L. 103–325, title III, §347(e), Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2241, provided that: "Notwithstanding the amendments made by this section [amending this section and section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking], a note that is directly secured by a first lien on one or more parcels of real estate upon which is located one or more commercial structures shall not be considered to be a mortgage related security under section 3(a)(41) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(41)] in any State that, prior to the expiration of 7 years after the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 23, 1994], enacts a statute that specifically refers to this section and either prohibits or provides for a more limited authority to purchase, hold, or invest in such securities by any person, trust, corporation, partnership, association, business trust, or business entity or class thereof than is provided by the amendments made by this subsection. The enactment by any State of any statute of the type described in the preceding sentence shall not affect the validity of any contractual commitment to purchase, hold, or invest that was made prior thereto, and shall not require the sale or other disposition of any securities acquired prior thereto."

DEFINITIONS

Pub. L. 112–106, title I, §101(c), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 308, provided that: "As used in this title [amending this section and sections 77b, 77e to 77g, 78k–1, 78m, 78n, 78n–1, 78o–6, 7213, and 7262 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 77b, 77g, and 78o–6 of this title, and amending provisions set out as a note under section 78l of this title], the following definitions shall apply:

"(1) COMMISSION.—The term 'Commission' means the Securities and Exchange Commission.

"(2) INITIAL PUBLIC OFFERING DATE.—The term 'initial public offering date' means the date of the first sale of common equity securities of an issuer pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.]."

Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §301(b)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–451, provided that: "As used in the amendment made by subsection (a) [enacting sections 206A to 206C of Pub. L. 106—102, set out below], the term 'security' has the same meaning as in section 2(a)(1) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77b(a)(1)] or section 3(a)(10) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(10)]."

Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §206, Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1393, as amended by Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §742(b), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1733, provided that:

"(a) DEFINITION OF IDENTIFIED BANKING PRODUCT.—Except as provided in subsection (e) [sic], for purposes of paragraphs (4) and (5) of section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(4), (5)), the term 'identified banking product' means—

"(1) a deposit account, savings account, certificate of deposit, or other deposit instrument issued by a bank;

"(2) a banker's acceptance;

"(3) a letter of credit issued or loan made by a bank;

"(4) a debit account at a bank arising from a credit card or similar arrangement;

"(5) a participation in a loan which the bank or an affiliate of the bank (other than a broker or dealer) funds, participates in, or owns that is sold—

"(A) to qualified investors; or

"(B) to other persons that—

"(i) have the opportunity to review and assess any material information, including information regarding the borrower's creditworthiness; and

"(ii) based on such factors as financial sophistication, net worth, and knowledge and experience in financial matters, have the capability to evaluate the information available, as determined under generally applicable banking standards or guidelines; or

"(6) any swap agreement, including credit and equity swaps, except that an equity swap that is sold directly to any person other than a qualified investor (as defined in section 3(a)(54) of the Securities Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(54)]) shall not be treated as an identified banking product.

"(b) DEFINITION OF SWAP AGREEMENT.—For purposes of subsection (a)(6), the term 'swap agreement' means any individually negotiated contract, agreement, warrant, note, or option that is based, in whole or in part, on the value of, any interest in, or any quantitative measure or the occurrence of any event relating to, one or more commodities, securities, currencies, interest or other rates, indices, or other assets, but does not include any other identified banking product, as defined in paragraphs (1) through (5) of subsection (a).

"(c) CLASSIFICATION LIMITED.—Classification of a particular product as an identified banking product pursuant to this section shall not be construed as finding or implying that such product is or is not a security for any purpose under the securities laws, or is or is not an account, agreement, contract, or transaction for any purpose under the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.].

"(d) INCORPORATED DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section, the terms 'bank' and 'qualified investor' have the same meanings as given in section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)], as amended by this Act."

Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §§206A–206C, as added by Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §301(a)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–449, and amended by Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §762(a), (b), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1759, provided that:

"SEC. 206A. SWAP AGREEMENT.

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (b), as used in this section, the term 'swap agreement' means any agreement, contract, or transaction that—

"(1) is a put, call, cap, floor, collar, or similar option of any kind for the purchase or sale of, or based on the value of, one or more interest or other rates, currencies, commodities, indices, quantitative measures, or other financial or economic interests or property of any kind;

"(2) provides for any purchase, sale, payment or delivery (other than a dividend on an equity security) that is dependent on the occurrence, non-occurrence, or the extent of the occurrence of an event or contingency associated with a potential financial, economic, or commercial consequence;

"(3) provides on an executory basis for the exchange, on a fixed or contingent basis, of one or more payments based on the value or level of one or more interest or other rates, currencies, commodities, securities, instruments of indebtedness, indices, quantitative measures, or other financial or economic interests or property of any kind, or any interest therein or based on the value thereof, and that transfers, as between the parties to the transaction, in whole or in part, the financial risk associated with a future change in any such value or level without also conveying a current or future direct or indirect ownership interest in an asset (including any enterprise or investment pool) or liability that incorporates the financial risk so transferred, including any such agreement, contract, or transaction commonly known as an interest rate swap, including a rate floor, rate cap, rate collar, cross-currency rate swap, basis swap, currency swap, equity index swap, equity swap, debt index swap, debt swap, credit spread, credit default swap, credit swap, weather swap, or commodity swap;

"(4) provides for the purchase or sale, on a fixed or contingent basis, of any commodity, currency, instrument, interest, right, service, good, article, or property of any kind; or

"(5) is any combination or permutation of, or option on, any agreement, contract, or transaction described in any of paragraphs (1) through (4).

"(b) EXCLUSIONS.—The term 'swap agreement' does not include—

"(1) any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security, certificate of deposit, or group or index of securities, including any interest therein or based on the value thereof;

"(2) any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege entered into on a national securities exchange registered pursuant to section 6(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78f(a)] relating to foreign currency;

"(3) any agreement, contract, or transaction providing for the purchase or sale of one or more securities on a fixed basis;

"(4) any agreement, contract, or transaction providing for the purchase or sale of one or more securities on a contingent basis, unless such agreement, contract, or transaction predicates such purchase or sale on the occurrence of a bona fide contingency that might reasonably be expected to affect or be affected by the creditworthiness of a party other than a party to the agreement, contract, or transaction;

"(5) any note, bond, or evidence of indebtedness that is a security as defined in section 2(a)(1) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77b(a)(1)] or section 3(a)(10) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(10)]; or

"(6) any agreement, contract, or transaction that is—

"(A) based on a security; and

"(B) entered into directly or through an underwriter (as defined in section 2(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77b(a)]) by the issuer of such security for the purposes of raising capital, unless such agreement, contract, or transaction is entered into to manage a risk associated with capital raising.

"(c) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION REGARDING MASTER AGREEMENTS.—As used in this section, the term 'swap agreement' shall be construed to include a master agreement that provides for an agreement, contract, or transaction that is a swap agreement pursuant to subsections (a) and (b), together with all supplements to any such master agreement, without regard to whether the master agreement contains an agreement, contract, or transaction that is not a swap agreement pursuant to subsections (a) and (b), except that the master agreement shall be considered to be a swap agreement only with respect to each agreement, contract, or transaction under the master agreement that is a swap agreement pursuant to subsections (a) and (b)."

[SECS. 206B, 206C. REPEALED. PUB. L. 111–203, TITLE VII, §762(A), JULY 21, 2010, 124 STAT. 1759.]

[Amendment by section 762(a), (b) of Pub. L. 111–203 to sections 206A–206C of Pub. L. 106–102, set out above, effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B.]

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

¹ *See References in Text note below.*

² *So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.*

³ *So in original. The "; and" probably should be a comma.*

⁴ *So in original. Probably should be followed by "and".*

⁵ *So in original. The semicolon probably should be a colon.*

⁶ *So in original. Probably should be "evidenced".*

⁷ *So in original. Two pars. (80) have been enacted.*

§78c–1. Swap agreements

(a) [Reserved]

(b) Security-based swap agreements

(1) The definition of "security" in section 78c(a)(10) of this title does not include any security-based swap agreement.

(2) The Commission is prohibited from registering, or requiring, recommending, or suggesting, the registration under this chapter of any security-based swap agreement. If the Commission becomes aware that a registrant has filed a registration application with respect to such a swap agreement, the Commission shall promptly so notify the registrant. Any such registration with respect to such a swap agreement shall be void and of no force or effect.

(3) Except as provided in section 78p(a) of this title with respect to reporting requirements, the Commission is prohibited from—

- (A) promulgating, interpreting, or enforcing rules; or
- (B) issuing orders of general applicability;

under this chapter in a manner that imposes or specifies reporting or recordkeeping requirements, procedures, or standards as prophylactic measures against fraud, manipulation, or insider trading with respect to any security-based swap agreement.

(4) References in this chapter to the "purchase" or "sale" of a security-based swap agreement shall be deemed to mean the execution, termination (prior to its scheduled maturity date), assignment, exchange, or similar transfer or conveyance of, or extinguishing of rights or obligations under, a security-based swap agreement, as the context may require.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §3A, as added Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(a)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–452; amended Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §762(d)(1), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1760.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(2) to (4), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–203, §762(d)(1)(A), struck out subsec. (a) and reserved that subsec. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The definition of 'security' in section 78c(a)(10) of this title does not include any non-security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206C of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)."

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111–203, §762(d)(1)(B), struck out "(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)" after "security-based swap agreement" wherever appearing.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

§78c–2. Securities-related derivatives

(a) Any agreement, contract, or transaction (or class thereof) that is exempted by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission pursuant to section 6(c)(1) of title 7 with the condition that the Commission exercise concurrent jurisdiction over such agreement, contract, or transaction (or class thereof) shall be deemed a security for purposes of the securities laws.

(b) With respect to any agreement, contract, or transaction (or class thereof) that is exempted by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission pursuant to section 6(c)(1) of title 7 with the condition that the Commission exercise concurrent jurisdiction over such agreement, contract, or transaction (or class thereof), references in the securities laws to the "purchase" or "sale" of a security shall be

deemed to include the execution, termination (prior to its scheduled maturity date), assignment, exchange, or similar transfer or conveyance of, or extinguishing of rights or obligations under such agreement, contract, or transaction, as the context may require.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §3B, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §717(b), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1651.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle A (§§711–754) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle A, see section 754 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note under section 1a of Title 7, Agriculture.

§78c–3. Clearing for security-based swaps

(a) In general

(1) Standard for clearing

It shall be unlawful for any person to engage in a security-based swap unless that person submits such security-based swap for clearing to a clearing agency that is registered under this chapter or a clearing agency that is exempt from registration under this chapter if the security-based swap is required to be cleared.

(2) Open access

The rules of a clearing agency described in paragraph (1) shall—

(A) prescribe that all security-based swaps submitted to the clearing agency with the same terms and conditions are economically equivalent within the clearing agency and may be offset with each other within the clearing agency; and

(B) provide for non-discriminatory clearing of a security-based swap executed bilaterally or on or through the rules of an unaffiliated national securities exchange or security-based swap execution facility.

(b) Commission review

(1) Commission-initiated review

(A) The Commission on an ongoing basis shall review each security-based swap, or any group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps to make a determination that such security-based swap, or group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps should be required to be cleared.

(B) The Commission shall provide at least a 30-day public comment period regarding any determination under subparagraph (A).

(2) Swap submissions

(A) A clearing agency shall submit to the Commission each security-based swap, or any group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps that it plans to accept for clearing and provide notice to its members (in a manner to be determined by the Commission) of such submission.

(B) Any security-based swap or group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps listed for clearing by a clearing agency as of July 21, 2010, shall be considered submitted to the Commission.

(C) The Commission shall—

(i) make available to the public any submission received under subparagraphs (A) and (B);

(ii) review each submission made under subparagraphs (A) and (B), and determine whether the security-based swap, or group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps, described in the submission is required to be cleared; and

(iii) provide at least a 30-day public comment period regarding its determination whether the

clearing requirement under subsection (a)(1) shall apply to the submission.

(3) Deadline

The Commission shall make its determination under paragraph (2)(C) not later than 90 days after receiving a submission made under paragraphs (2)(A) and (2)(B), unless the submitting clearing agency agrees to an extension for the time limitation established under this paragraph.

(4) Determination

(A) In reviewing a submission made under paragraph (2), the Commission shall review whether the submission is consistent with section 78q–1 of this title.

(B) In reviewing a security-based swap, group of security-based swaps or class of security-based swaps pursuant to paragraph (1) or a submission made under paragraph (2), the Commission shall take into account the following factors:

(i) The existence of significant outstanding notional exposures, trading liquidity and adequate pricing data.

(ii) The availability of rule framework, capacity, operational expertise and resources, and credit support infrastructure to clear the contract on terms that are consistent with the material terms and trading conventions on which the contract is then traded.

(iii) The effect on the mitigation of systemic risk, taking into account the size of the market for such contract and the resources of the clearing agency available to clear the contract.

(iv) The effect on competition, including appropriate fees and charges applied to clearing.

(v) The existence of reasonable legal certainty in the event of the insolvency of the relevant clearing agency or 1 or more of its clearing members with regard to the treatment of customer and security-based swap counterparty positions, funds, and property.

(C) In making a determination under subsection (b)(1) or paragraph (2)(C) that the clearing requirement shall apply, the Commission may require such terms and conditions to the requirement as the Commission determines to be appropriate.

(5) Rules

Not later than 1 year after July 21, 2010, the Commission shall adopt rules for a clearing agency's submission for review, pursuant to this subsection, of a security-based swap, or a group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps, that it seeks to accept for clearing. Nothing in this paragraph limits the Commission from making a determination under paragraph (2)(C) for security-based swaps described in paragraph (2)(B).

(c) Stay of clearing requirement

(1) In general

After making a determination pursuant to subsection (b)(2), the Commission, on application of a counterparty to a security-based swap or on its own initiative, may stay the clearing requirement of subsection (a)(1) until the Commission completes a review of the terms of the security-based swap (or the group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps) and the clearing arrangement.

(2) Deadline

The Commission shall complete a review undertaken pursuant to paragraph (1) not later than 90 days after issuance of the stay, unless the clearing agency that clears the security-based swap, or group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps, agrees to an extension of the time limitation established under this paragraph.

(3) Determination

Upon completion of the review undertaken pursuant to paragraph (1), the Commission may—

(A) determine, unconditionally or subject to such terms and conditions as the Commission determines to be appropriate, that the security-based swap, or group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps, must be cleared pursuant to this subsection if it finds that such clearing is consistent with subsection (b)(4); or

(B) determine that the clearing requirement of subsection (a)(1) shall not apply to the security-based swap, or group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps.

(4) Rules

Not later than 1 year after July 21, 2010, the Commission shall adopt rules for reviewing, pursuant to this subsection, a clearing agency's clearing of a security-based swap, or a group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps, that it has accepted for clearing.

(d) Prevention of evasion

(1) In general

The Commission shall prescribe rules under this section (and issue interpretations of rules prescribed under this section), as determined by the Commission to be necessary to prevent evasions of the mandatory clearing requirements under this chapter.

(2) Duty of Commission to investigate and take certain actions

To the extent the Commission finds that a particular security-based swap or any group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps that would otherwise be subject to mandatory clearing but no clearing agency has listed the security-based swap or the group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps for clearing, the Commission shall—

(A) investigate the relevant facts and circumstances;

(B) within 30 days issue a public report containing the results of the investigation; and

(C) take such actions as the Commission determines to be necessary and in the public interest, which may include requiring the retaining of adequate margin or capital by parties to the security-based swap or the group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps.

(3) Effect on authority

Nothing in this subsection—

(A) authorizes the Commission to adopt rules requiring a clearing agency to list for clearing a security-based swap or any group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps if the clearing of the security-based swap or the group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps would threaten the financial integrity of the clearing agency; and

(B) affects the authority of the Commission to enforce the open access provisions of subsection (a)(2) with respect to a security-based swap or the group, category, type, or class of security-based swaps that is listed for clearing by a clearing agency.

(e) Reporting transition rules

Rules adopted by the Commission under this section shall provide for the reporting of data, as follows:

(1) Security-based swaps entered into before July 21, 2010, shall be reported to a registered security-based swap data repository or the Commission no later than 180 days after the effective date of this section.

(2) Security-based swaps entered into on or after July 21, 2010, shall be reported to a registered security-based swap data repository or the Commission no later than the later of—

(A) 90 days after such effective date; or

(B) such other time after entering into the security-based swap as the Commission may prescribe by rule or regulation.

(f) Clearing transition rules

(1) Security-based swaps entered into before July 21, 2010, are exempt from the clearing requirements of this subsection if reported pursuant to subsection (e)(1).

(2) Security-based swaps entered into before application of the clearing requirement pursuant to this section are exempt from the clearing requirements of this section if reported pursuant to subsection (e)(2).

(g) Exceptions

(1) In general

The requirements of subsection (a)(1) shall not apply to a security-based swap if 1 of the counterparties to the security-based swap—

- (A) is not a financial entity;
- (B) is using security-based swaps to hedge or mitigate commercial risk; and
- (C) notifies the Commission, in a manner set forth by the Commission, how it generally meets its financial obligations associated with entering into non-cleared security-based swaps.

(2) Option to clear

The application of the clearing exception in paragraph (1) is solely at the discretion of the counterparty to the security-based swap that meets the conditions of subparagraphs (A) through (C) of paragraph (1).

(3) Financial entity definition

(A) In general

For the purposes of this subsection, the term "financial entity" means—

- (i) a swap dealer;
- (ii) a security-based swap dealer;
- (iii) a major swap participant;
- (iv) a major security-based swap participant;
- (v) a commodity pool as defined in section 1a(10) of title 7;
- (vi) a private fund as defined in section 80b-2(a) of this title;
- (vii) an employee benefit plan as defined in paragraphs (3) and (32) of section 1002 of title 29;
- (viii) a person predominantly engaged in activities that are in the business of banking or financial in nature, as defined in section 1843(k) of title 12.

(B) Exclusion

The Commission shall consider whether to exempt small banks, savings associations, farm credit system institutions, and credit unions, including—

- (i) depository institutions with total assets of \$10,000,000,000 or less;
- (ii) farm credit system institutions with total assets of \$10,000,000,000 or less; or
- (iii) credit unions with total assets of \$10,000,000,000 or less.

(4) Treatment of affiliates

(A) In general

An affiliate of a person that qualifies for an exception under this subsection (including affiliate entities predominantly engaged in providing financing for the purchase of the merchandise or manufactured goods of the person) may qualify for the exception only if the affiliate—

- (i) enters into the security-based swap to hedge or mitigate the commercial risk of the person or other affiliate of the person that is not a financial entity, and the commercial risk that the affiliate is hedging or mitigating has been transferred to the affiliate;
- (ii) is directly and wholly-owned by another affiliate qualified for the exception under this paragraph or an entity that is not a financial entity;
- (iii) is not indirectly majority-owned by a financial entity;
- (iv) is not ultimately owned by a parent company that is a financial entity; and
- (v) does not provide any services, financial or otherwise, to any affiliate that is a nonbank financial company supervised by the Board of Governors (as defined under section 5311 of title 12).

(B) Limitation on qualifying affiliates

The exception in subparagraph (A) shall not apply if the affiliate is—

- (i) a swap dealer;

- (ii) a security-based swap dealer;
- (iii) a major swap participant;
- (iv) a major security-based swap participant;
- (v) a commodity pool;
- (vi) a bank holding company;
- (vii) a private fund, as defined in section 80b-2(a) of this title;
- (viii) an employee benefit plan or government ¹ plan, as defined in paragraphs (3) and (32) of section 1002 of title 29;
- (ix) an insured depository institution;
- (x) a farm credit system institution;
- (xi) a credit union;
- (xii) a nonbank financial company supervised by the Board of Governors (as defined under section 5311 of title 12); or
- (xiii) an entity engaged in the business of insurance and subject to capital requirements established by an insurance governmental authority of a State, a territory of the United States, the District of Columbia, a country other than the United States, or a political subdivision of a country other than the United States that is engaged in the supervision of insurance companies under insurance law.

(C) Limitation on affiliates' affiliates

Unless the Commission determines, by order, rule, or regulation, that it is in the public interest, the exception in subparagraph (A) shall not apply with respect to an affiliate if such affiliate is itself affiliated with—

- (i) a major security-based swap participant;
- (ii) a security-based swap dealer;
- (iii) a major swap participant; or
- (iv) a swap dealer.

(D) Conditions on transactions

With respect to an affiliate that qualifies for the exception in subparagraph (A)—

- (i) such affiliate may not enter into any security-based swap other than for the purpose of hedging or mitigating commercial risk; and
- (ii) neither such affiliate nor any person affiliated with such affiliate that is not a financial entity may enter into a security-based swap with or on behalf of any affiliate that is a financial entity or otherwise assume, net, combine, or consolidate the risk of security-based swaps entered into by any such financial entity, except one that is an affiliate that qualifies for the exception under subparagraph (A).

(E) Transition rule for affiliates

An affiliate, subsidiary, or a wholly owned entity of a person that qualifies for an exception under subparagraph (A) and is predominantly engaged in providing financing for the purchase or lease of merchandise or manufactured goods of the person shall be exempt from the margin requirement described in section 78o-10(e) of this title and the clearing requirement described in subsection (a) with regard to security-based swaps entered into to mitigate the risk of the financing activities for not less than a 2-year period beginning on July 21, 2010.

(F) Risk management program

Any security-based swap entered into by an affiliate that qualifies for the exception in subparagraph (A) shall be subject to a centralized risk management program of the affiliate, which is reasonably designed both to monitor and manage the risks associated with the security-based swap and to identify each of the affiliates on whose behalf a security-based swap was entered into.

(5) Election of counterparty

(A) Security-based swaps required to be cleared

With respect to any security-based swap that is subject to the mandatory clearing requirement under subsection (a) and entered into by a security-based swap dealer or a major security-based swap participant with a counterparty that is not a swap dealer, major swap participant, security-based swap dealer, or major security-based swap participant, the counterparty shall have the sole right to select the clearing agency at which the security-based swap will be cleared.

(B) Security-based swaps not required to be cleared

With respect to any security-based swap that is not subject to the mandatory clearing requirement under subsection (a) and entered into by a security-based swap dealer or a major security-based swap participant with a counterparty that is not a swap dealer, major swap participant, security-based swap dealer, or major security-based swap participant, the counterparty—

- (i) may elect to require clearing of the security-based swap; and
- (ii) shall have the sole right to select the clearing agency at which the security-based swap will be cleared.

(6) Abuse of exception

The Commission may prescribe such rules or issue interpretations of the rules as the Commission determines to be necessary to prevent abuse of the exceptions described in this subsection. The Commission may also request information from those persons claiming the clearing exception as necessary to prevent abuse of the exceptions described in this subsection.

(h) Trade execution

(1) In general

With respect to transactions involving security-based swaps subject to the clearing requirement of subsection (a)(1), counterparties shall—

- (A) execute the transaction on an exchange; or
- (B) execute the transaction on a security-based swap execution facility registered under section 78c-4 of this title or a security-based swap execution facility that is exempt from registration under section 78c-4(e) of this title.

(2) Exception

The requirements of subparagraphs (A) and (B) of paragraph (1) shall not apply if no exchange or security-based swap execution facility makes the security-based swap available to trade or for security-based swap transactions subject to the clearing exception under subsection (g).

(i) Board approval

Exemptions from the requirements of this section to clear a security-based swap or execute a security-based swap through a national securities exchange or security-based swap execution facility shall be available to a counterparty that is an issuer of securities that are registered under section 78l of this title or that is required to file reports pursuant to section 78o(d) of this title, only if an appropriate committee of the issuer's board or governing body has reviewed and approved the issuer's decision to enter into security-based swaps that are subject to such exemptions.

(j) Designation of chief compliance officer

(1) In general

Each registered clearing agency shall designate an individual to serve as a chief compliance officer.

(2) Duties

The chief compliance officer shall—

- (A) report directly to the board or to the senior officer of the clearing agency;
- (B) in consultation with its board, a body performing a function similar thereto, or the senior officer of the registered clearing agency, resolve any conflicts of interest that may arise;

(C) be responsible for administering each policy and procedure that is required to be established pursuant to this section;

(D) ensure compliance with this chapter (including regulations issued under this chapter) relating to agreements, contracts, or transactions, including each rule prescribed by the Commission under this section;

(E) establish procedures for the remediation of noncompliance issues identified by the compliance officer through any—

- (i) compliance office review;
- (ii) look-back;
- (iii) internal or external audit finding;
- (iv) self-reported error; or
- (v) validated complaint; and

(F) establish and follow appropriate procedures for the handling, management response, remediation, retesting, and closing of noncompliance issues.

(3) Annual reports

(A) In general

In accordance with rules prescribed by the Commission, the chief compliance officer shall annually prepare and sign a report that contains a description of—

- (i) the compliance of the registered clearing agency or security-based swap execution facility of the compliance officer with respect to this chapter (including regulations under this chapter); and
- (ii) each policy and procedure of the registered clearing agency of the compliance officer (including the code of ethics and conflict of interest policies of the registered clearing agency).

(B) Requirements

A compliance report under subparagraph (A) shall—

- (i) accompany each appropriate financial report of the registered clearing agency that is required to be furnished to the Commission pursuant to this section; and
- (ii) include a certification that, under penalty of law, the compliance report is accurate and complete.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §3C, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §763(a), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1762; amended Pub. L. 114–113, div. O, title VII, §705(b), Dec. 18, 2015, 129 Stat. 3027.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1) and (d)(1), was in the original "this Act", and this chapter, referred to in subsec. (j)(2)(D), (3)(A)(i), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

For the effective date of this section, referred to in subsec. (e), see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note under section 77b of this title.

Subsection (c) of that section, referred to in subsec. (g)(4)(B)(v), was in the original "subsection (c) of that Act", and was translated as meaning subsec. (c) of section 3 of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsec. (g)(4). Pub. L. 114–113 added subpars. (A) to (D) and (F), redesignated former subpar. (C) as (E), and struck out former subpars. (A) and (B) which related to application of exception to affiliates and prohibition relating to certain affiliates, respectively.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note under section 77b of this title.

¹ So in original. Probably should be "governmental".

§78c–4. Security-based swap execution facilities

(a) Registration

(1) In general

No person may operate a facility for the trading or processing of security-based swaps, unless the facility is registered as a security-based swap execution facility or as a national securities exchange under this section.

(2) Dual registration

Any person that is registered as a security-based swap execution facility under this section shall register with the Commission regardless of whether the person also is registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission as a swap execution facility.

(b) Trading and trade processing

A security-based swap execution facility that is registered under subsection (a) may—

- (1) make available for trading any security-based swap; and
- (2) facilitate trade processing of any security-based swap.

(c) Identification of facility used to trade security-based swaps by national securities exchanges

A national securities exchange shall, to the extent that the exchange also operates a security-based swap execution facility and uses the same electronic trade execution system for listing and executing trades of security-based swaps on or through the exchange and the facility, identify whether electronic trading of such security-based swaps is taking place on or through the national securities exchange or the security-based swap execution facility.

(d) Core principles for security-based swap execution facilities

(1) Compliance with core principles

(A) In general

To be registered, and maintain registration, as a security-based swap execution facility, the security-based swap execution facility shall comply with—

- (i) the core principles described in this subsection; and
- (ii) any requirement that the Commission may impose by rule or regulation.

(B) Reasonable discretion of security-based swap execution facility

Unless otherwise determined by the Commission, by rule or regulation, a security-based swap execution facility described in subparagraph (A) shall have reasonable discretion in establishing the manner in which it complies with the core principles described in this subsection.

(2) Compliance with rules

A security-based swap execution facility shall—

(A) establish and enforce compliance with any rule established by such security-based swap execution facility, including—

- (i) the terms and conditions of the security-based swaps traded or processed on or through the facility; and

(ii) any limitation on access to the facility;

(B) establish and enforce trading, trade processing, and participation rules that will deter abuses and have the capacity to detect, investigate, and enforce those rules, including means—

(i) to provide market participants with impartial access to the market; and

(ii) to capture information that may be used in establishing whether rule violations have occurred; and

(C) establish rules governing the operation of the facility, including rules specifying trading procedures to be used in entering and executing orders traded or posted on the facility, including block trades.

(3) Security-based swaps not readily susceptible to manipulation

The security-based swap execution facility shall permit trading only in security-based swaps that are not readily susceptible to manipulation.

(4) Monitoring of trading and trade processing

The security-based swap execution facility shall—

(A) establish and enforce rules or terms and conditions defining, or specifications detailing—

(i) trading procedures to be used in entering and executing orders traded on or through the facilities of the security-based swap execution facility; and

(ii) procedures for trade processing of security-based swaps on or through the facilities of the security-based swap execution facility; and

(B) monitor trading in security-based swaps to prevent manipulation, price distortion, and disruptions of the delivery or cash settlement process through surveillance, compliance, and disciplinary practices and procedures, including methods for conducting real-time monitoring of trading and comprehensive and accurate trade reconstructions.

(5) Ability to obtain information

The security-based swap execution facility shall—

(A) establish and enforce rules that will allow the facility to obtain any necessary information to perform any of the functions described in this subsection;

(B) provide the information to the Commission on request; and

(C) have the capacity to carry out such international information-sharing agreements as the Commission may require.

(6) Financial integrity of transactions

The security-based swap execution facility shall establish and enforce rules and procedures for ensuring the financial integrity of security-based swaps entered on or through the facilities of the security-based swap execution facility, including the clearance and settlement of security-based swaps pursuant to section 78c-3(a)(1) of this title.

(7) Emergency authority

The security-based swap execution facility shall adopt rules to provide for the exercise of emergency authority, in consultation or cooperation with the Commission, as is necessary and appropriate, including the authority to liquidate or transfer open positions in any security-based swap or to suspend or curtail trading in a security-based swap.

(8) Timely publication of trading information

(A) In general

The security-based swap execution facility shall make public timely information on price, trading volume, and other trading data on security-based swaps to the extent prescribed by the Commission.

(B) Capacity of security-based swap execution facility

The security-based swap execution facility shall be required to have the capacity to electronically capture and transmit and disseminate trade information with respect to transactions executed on or through the facility.

(9) Recordkeeping and reporting

(A) In general

A security-based swap execution facility shall—

- (i) maintain records of all activities relating to the business of the facility, including a complete audit trail, in a form and manner acceptable to the Commission for a period of 5 years; and
- (ii) report to the Commission, in a form and manner acceptable to the Commission, such information as the Commission determines to be necessary or appropriate for the Commission to perform the duties of the Commission under this chapter.

(B) Requirements

The Commission shall adopt data collection and reporting requirements for security-based swap execution facilities that are comparable to corresponding requirements for clearing agencies and security-based swap data repositories.

(10) Antitrust considerations

Unless necessary or appropriate to achieve the purposes of this chapter, the security-based swap execution facility shall not—

- (A) adopt any rules or taking ¹ any actions that result in any unreasonable restraint of trade; or
- (B) impose any material anticompetitive burden on trading or clearing.

(11) Conflicts of interest

The security-based swap execution facility shall—

- (A) establish and enforce rules to minimize conflicts of interest in its decision-making process; and
- (B) establish a process for resolving the conflicts of interest.

(12) Financial resources

(A) In general

The security-based swap execution facility shall have adequate financial, operational, and managerial resources to discharge each responsibility of the security-based swap execution facility, as determined by the Commission.

(B) Determination of resource adequacy

The financial resources of a security-based swap execution facility shall be considered to be adequate if the value of the financial resources—

- (i) enables the organization to meet its financial obligations to its members and participants notwithstanding a default by the member or participant creating the largest financial exposure for that organization in extreme but plausible market conditions; and
- (ii) exceeds the total amount that would enable the security-based swap execution facility to cover the operating costs of the security-based swap execution facility for a 1-year period, as calculated on a rolling basis.

(13) System safeguards

The security-based swap execution facility shall—

- (A) establish and maintain a program of risk analysis and oversight to identify and minimize sources of operational risk, through the development of appropriate controls and procedures, and automated systems, that—
 - (i) are reliable and secure; and
 - (ii) have adequate scalable capacity;

(B) establish and maintain emergency procedures, backup facilities, and a plan for disaster recovery that allow for—

- (i) the timely recovery and resumption of operations; and
- (ii) the fulfillment of the responsibilities and obligations of the security-based swap execution facility; and

(C) periodically conduct tests to verify that the backup resources of the security-based swap execution facility are sufficient to ensure continued—

- (i) order processing and trade matching;
- (ii) price reporting;
- (iii) market surveillance; and
- (iv) maintenance of a comprehensive and accurate audit trail.

(14) Designation of chief compliance officer

(A) In general

Each security-based swap execution facility shall designate an individual to serve as a chief compliance officer.

(B) Duties

The chief compliance officer shall—

- (i) report directly to the board or to the senior officer of the facility;
- (ii) review compliance with the core principles in this subsection;
- (iii) in consultation with the board of the facility, a body performing a function similar to that of a board, or the senior officer of the facility, resolve any conflicts of interest that may arise;
- (iv) be responsible for establishing and administering the policies and procedures required to be established pursuant to this section;
- (v) ensure compliance with this chapter and the rules and regulations issued under this chapter, including rules prescribed by the Commission pursuant to this section;
- (vi) establish procedures for the remediation of noncompliance issues found during—
 - (I) compliance office reviews;
 - (II) look backs;
 - (III) internal or external audit findings;
 - (IV) self-reported errors; or
 - (V) through validated complaints; and
- (vii) establish and follow appropriate procedures for the handling, management response, remediation, retesting, and closing of noncompliance issues.

(C) Annual reports

(i) In general

In accordance with rules prescribed by the Commission, the chief compliance officer shall annually prepare and sign a report that contains a description of—

- (I) the compliance of the security-based swap execution facility with this chapter; and
- (II) the policies and procedures, including the code of ethics and conflict of interest policies, of the security-based security-based ² swap execution facility.

(ii) Requirements

The chief compliance officer shall—

- (I) submit each report described in clause (i) with the appropriate financial report of the security-based swap execution facility that is required to be submitted to the Commission pursuant to this section; and
- (II) include in the report a certification that, under penalty of law, the report is accurate

and complete.

(e) Exemptions

The Commission may exempt, conditionally or unconditionally, a security-based swap execution facility from registration under this section if the Commission finds that the facility is subject to comparable, comprehensive supervision and regulation on a consolidated basis by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

(f) Rules

The Commission shall prescribe rules governing the regulation of security-based swap execution facilities under this section.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §3D, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §763(c), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1769.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (d)(9)(A)(ii), (10), (14)(B)(v), (C)(i)(I), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note under section 77b of this title.

¹ *So in original. Probably should be "take".*

² *So in original.*

§78c–5. Segregation of assets held as collateral in security-based swap transactions

(a) Registration requirement

It shall be unlawful for any person to accept any money, securities, or property (or to extend any credit in lieu of money, securities, or property) from, for, or on behalf of a security-based swaps customer to margin, guarantee, or secure a security-based swap cleared by or through a clearing agency (including money, securities, or property accruing to the customer as the result of such a security-based swap), unless the person shall have registered under this chapter with the Commission as a broker, dealer, or security-based swap dealer, and the registration shall not have expired nor been suspended nor revoked.

(b) Cleared security-based swaps

(1) Segregation required

A broker, dealer, or security-based swap dealer shall treat and deal with all money, securities, and property of any security-based swaps customer received to margin, guarantee, or secure a security-based swap cleared by or through ¹ a clearing agency (including money, securities, or property accruing to the security-based swaps customer as the result of such a security-based swap) as belonging to the security-based swaps customer.

(2) Commingling prohibited

Money, securities, and property of a security-based swaps customer described in paragraph (1) shall be separately accounted for and shall not be commingled with the funds of the broker, dealer, or security-based swap dealer or be used to margin, secure, or guarantee any trades or contracts of any security-based swaps customer or person other than the person for whom the same are held.

(c) Exceptions

(1) Use of funds

(A) In general

Notwithstanding subsection (b), money, securities, and property of a security-based swaps customer of a broker, dealer, or security-based swap dealer described in subsection (b) may, for convenience, be commingled and deposited in the same 1 or more accounts with any bank or trust company or with a clearing agency.

(B) Withdrawal

Notwithstanding subsection (b), such share of the money, securities, and property described in subparagraph (A) as in the normal course of business shall be necessary to margin, guarantee, secure, transfer, adjust, or settle a cleared security-based swap with a clearing agency, or with any member of the clearing agency, may be withdrawn and applied to such purposes, including the payment of commissions, brokerage, interest, taxes, storage, and other charges, lawfully accruing in connection with the cleared security-based swap.

(2) Commission action

Notwithstanding subsection (b), in accordance with such terms and conditions as the Commission may prescribe by rule, regulation, or order, any money, securities, or property of the security-based swaps customer of a broker, dealer, or security-based swap dealer described in subsection (b) may be commingled and deposited as provided in this section with any other money, securities, or property received by the broker, dealer, or security-based swap dealer and required by the Commission to be separately accounted for and treated and dealt with as belonging to the security-based swaps customer of the broker, dealer, or security-based swap dealer.

(d) Permitted investments

Money described in subsection (b) may be invested in obligations of the United States, in general obligations of any State or of any political subdivision of a State, and in obligations fully guaranteed as to principal and interest by the United States, or in any other investment that the Commission may by rule or regulation prescribe, and such investments shall be made in accordance with such rules and regulations and subject to such conditions as the Commission may prescribe.

(e) Prohibition

It shall be unlawful for any person, including any clearing agency and any depository institution, that has received any money, securities, or property for deposit in a separate account or accounts as provided in subsection (b) to hold, dispose of, or use any such money, securities, or property as belonging to the depositing broker, dealer, or security-based swap dealer or any person other than the swaps customer of the broker, dealer, or security-based swap dealer.

(f) Segregation requirements for uncleared security-based swaps

(1) Segregation of assets held as collateral in uncleared security-based swap transactions

(A) Notification

A security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant shall be required to notify the counterparty of the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant at the beginning of a security-based swap transaction that the counterparty has the right to require segregation of the funds of other property supplied to margin, guarantee, or secure the obligations of the counterparty.

(B) Segregation and maintenance of funds

At the request of a counterparty to a security-based swap that provides funds or other property to a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant to margin, guarantee, or secure the obligations of the counterparty, the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant shall—

- (i) segregate the funds or other property for the benefit of the counterparty; and
- (ii) in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may promulgate, maintain the funds or other property in a segregated account separate from the assets and other interests of the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant.

(2) Applicability

The requirements described in paragraph (1) shall—

(A) apply only to a security-based swap between a counterparty and a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant that is not submitted for clearing to a clearing agency; and

(B)(i) not apply to variation margin payments; or

(ii) not preclude any commercial arrangement regarding—

(I) the investment of segregated funds or other property that may only be invested in such investments as the Commission may permit by rule or regulation; and

(II) the related allocation of gains and losses resulting from any investment of the segregated funds or other property.

(3) Use of independent third-party custodians

The segregated account described in paragraph (1) shall be—

(A) carried by an independent third-party custodian; and

(B) designated as a segregated account for and on behalf of the counterparty.

(4) Reporting requirement

If the counterparty does not choose to require segregation of the funds or other property supplied to margin, guarantee, or secure the obligations of the counterparty, the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant shall report to the counterparty of the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant on a quarterly basis that the back office procedures of the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant relating to margin and collateral requirements are in compliance with the agreement of the counterparties.

(g) Bankruptcy

A security-based swap, as defined in section 78c(a)(68) of this title shall be considered to be a security as such term is used in section 101(53A)(B) and subchapter III of title 11.² An account that holds a security-based swap, other than a portfolio margining account referred to in section 78o(c)(3)(C) of this title shall be considered to be a securities account, as that term is defined in section 741 of title 11. The definitions of the terms "purchase" and "sale" in section 78c(a)(13) and (14) of this title shall be applied to the terms "purchase" and "sale", as used in section 741 of title 11. The term "customer", as defined in section 741 of title 11, excludes any person, to the extent that such person has a claim based on any open repurchase agreement, open reverse repurchase agreement, stock borrowed agreement, non-cleared option, or non-cleared security-based swap except to the extent of any margin delivered to or by the customer with respect to which there is a customer protection requirement under section 78o(c)(3) of this title or a segregation requirement. (June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §3E, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §763(d), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1774.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out

under section 78a of this title.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note under section 77b of this title.

¹ *So in original. Probably should be "through".*

² *So in original.*

§78d. Securities and Exchange Commission

(a) Establishment; composition; limitations on commissioners; terms of office

There is hereby established a Securities and Exchange Commission (hereinafter referred to as the "Commission") to be composed of five commissioners to be appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. Not more than three of such commissioners shall be members of the same political party, and in making appointments members of different political parties shall be appointed alternately as nearly as may be practicable. No commissioner shall engage in any other business, vocation, or employment than that of serving as commissioner, nor shall any commissioner participate, directly or indirectly, in any stock-market operations or transactions of a character subject to regulation by the Commission pursuant to this chapter. Each commissioner shall hold office for a term of five years and until his successor is appointed and has qualified, except that he shall not so continue to serve beyond the expiration of the next session of Congress subsequent to the expiration of said fixed term of office, and except (1) any commissioner appointed to fill a vacancy occurring prior to the expiration of the term for which his predecessor was appointed shall be appointed for the remainder of such term, and (2) the terms of office of the commissioners first taking office after June 6, 1934, shall expire as designated by the President at the time of nomination, one at the end of one year, one at the end of two years, one at the end of three years, one at the end of four years, and one at the end of five years, after June 6, 1934.

(b) Appointment and compensation of staff and leasing authority

(1) Appointment and compensation

The Commission shall appoint and compensate officers, attorneys, economists, examiners, and other employees in accordance with section 4802 of title 5.

(2) Reporting of information

In establishing and adjusting schedules of compensation and benefits for officers, attorneys, economists, examiners, and other employees of the Commission under applicable provisions of law, the Commission shall inform the heads of the agencies referred to under section 1833b of title 12 and Congress of such compensation and benefits and shall seek to maintain comparability with such agencies regarding compensation and benefits.

(3) Leasing authority

Notwithstanding ¹ any other provision of law, the Commission is authorized to enter directly into leases for real property for office, meeting, storage, and such other space as is necessary to carry out its functions, and shall be exempt from any General Services Administration space management regulations or directives.

(c) Acceptance of travel support for Commission activities from non-Federal sources;

regulations

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, in accordance with regulations which the Commission shall prescribe to prevent conflicts of interest, the Commission may accept payment and reimbursement, in cash or in kind, from non-Federal agencies, organizations, and individuals for travel, subsistence, and other necessary expenses incurred by Commission members and employees in attending meetings and conferences concerning the functions or activities of the Commission. Any payment or reimbursement accepted shall be credited to the appropriated funds of the Commission. The amount of travel, subsistence, and other necessary expenses for members and employees paid or reimbursed under this subsection may exceed per diem amounts established in official travel regulations, but the Commission may include in its regulations under this subsection a limitation on such amounts.

(d) Acceptance of relocation expenses from former employers by professional fellows program participants

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, former employers of participants in the Commission's professional fellows programs may pay such participants their actual expenses for relocation to Washington, District of Columbia, to facilitate their participation in such programs, and program participants may accept such payments.

(e) Fee payments

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, whenever any fee is required to be paid to the Commission pursuant to any provision of the securities laws or any other law, the Commission may provide by rule that such fee shall be paid in a manner other than in cash and the Commission may also specify the time that such fee shall be determined and paid relative to the filing of any statement or document with the Commission.

(f) Reimbursement of expenses for assisting foreign securities authorities

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission may accept payment and reimbursement, in cash or in kind, from a foreign securities authority, or made on behalf of such authority, for necessary expenses incurred by the Commission, its members, and employees in carrying out any investigation pursuant to section 78u(a)(2) of this title or in providing any other assistance to a foreign securities authority. Any payment or reimbursement accepted shall be considered a reimbursement to the appropriated funds of the Commission.

(g) Office of the Investor Advocate

(1) Office established

There is established within the Commission the Office of the Investor Advocate (in this subsection referred to as the "Office").

(2) Investor Advocate

(A) In general

The head of the Office shall be the Investor Advocate, who shall—

- (i) report directly to the Chairman; and
- (ii) be appointed by the Chairman, in consultation with the Commission, from among individuals having experience in advocating for the interests of investors in securities and investor protection issues, from the perspective of investors.

(B) Compensation

The annual rate of pay for the Investor Advocate shall be equal to the highest rate of annual pay for other senior executives who report to the Chairman of the Commission.

(C) Limitation on service

An individual who serves as the Investor Advocate may not be employed by the Commission—

- (i) during the 2-year period ending on the date of appointment as Investor Advocate; or

(ii) during the 5-year period beginning on the date on which the person ceases to serve as the Investor Advocate.

(3) Staff of Office

The Investor Advocate, after consultation with the Chairman of the Commission, may retain or employ independent counsel, research staff, and service staff, as the Investor Advocate deems necessary to carry out the functions, powers, and duties of the Office.

(4) Functions of the Investor Advocate

The Investor Advocate shall—

(A) assist retail investors in resolving significant problems such investors may have with the Commission or with self-regulatory organizations;

(B) identify areas in which investors would benefit from changes in the regulations of the Commission or the rules of self-regulatory organizations;

(C) identify problems that investors have with financial service providers and investment products;

(D) analyze the potential impact on investors of—

(i) proposed regulations of the Commission; and

(ii) proposed rules of self-regulatory organizations registered under this chapter; and

(E) to the extent practicable, propose to the Commission changes in the regulations or orders of the Commission and to Congress any legislative, administrative, or personnel changes that may be appropriate to mitigate problems identified under this paragraph and to promote the interests of investors.

(5) Access to documents

The Commission shall ensure that the Investor Advocate has full access to the documents of the Commission and any self-regulatory organization, as necessary to carry out the functions of the Office.

(6) Annual reports

(A) Report on objectives

(i) In general

Not later than June 30 of each year after 2010, the Investor Advocate shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives a report on the objectives of the Investor Advocate for the following fiscal year.

(ii) Contents

Each report required under clause (i) shall contain full and substantive analysis and explanation.

(B) Report on activities

(i) In general

Not later than December 31 of each year after 2010, the Investor Advocate shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives a report on the activities of the Investor Advocate during the immediately preceding fiscal year.

(ii) Contents

Each report required under clause (i) shall include—

(I) appropriate statistical information and full and substantive analysis;

(II) information on steps that the Investor Advocate has taken during the reporting period to improve investor services and the responsiveness of the Commission and self-regulatory organizations to investor concerns;

(III) a summary of the most serious problems encountered by investors during the reporting period;

(IV) an inventory of the items described in subclause (III) that includes—

(aa) identification of any action taken by the Commission or the self-regulatory organization and the result of such action;

(bb) the length of time that each item has remained on such inventory; and

(cc) for items on which no action has been taken, the reasons for inaction, and an identification of any official who is responsible for such action;

(V) recommendations for such administrative and legislative actions as may be appropriate to resolve problems encountered by investors; and

(VI) any other information, as determined appropriate by the Investor Advocate.

(iii) Independence

Each report required under this paragraph shall be provided directly to the Committees listed in clause (i) without any prior review or comment from the Commission, any commissioner, any other officer or employee of the Commission, or the Office of Management and Budget.

(iv) Confidentiality

No report required under clause (i) may contain confidential information.

(7) Regulations

The Commission shall, by regulation, establish procedures requiring a formal response to all recommendations submitted to the Commission by the Investor Advocate, not later than 3 months after the date of such submission.

(8) Ombudsman

(A) Appointment

Not later than 180 days after the date on which the first Investor Advocate is appointed under paragraph (2)(A)(i),² the Investor Advocate shall appoint an Ombudsman, who shall report directly to the Investor Advocate.

(B) Duties

The Ombudsman appointed under subparagraph (A) shall—

(i) act as a liaison between the Commission and any retail investor in resolving problems that retail investors may have with the Commission or with self-regulatory organizations;

(ii) review and make recommendations regarding policies and procedures to encourage persons to present questions to the Investor Advocate regarding compliance with the securities laws; and

(iii) establish safeguards to maintain the confidentiality of communications between the persons described in clause (ii) and the Ombudsman.

(C) Limitation

In carrying out the duties of the Ombudsman under subparagraph (B), the Ombudsman shall utilize personnel of the Commission to the extent practicable. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed as replacing, altering, or diminishing the activities of any ombudsman or similar office of any other agency.

(D) Report

The Ombudsman shall submit a semiannual report to the Investor Advocate that describes the activities and evaluates the effectiveness of the Ombudsman during the preceding year. The Investor Advocate shall include the reports required under this section in the reports required to be submitted by the Inspector Advocate under paragraph (6).

(h) Examiners

(1) Division of Trading and Markets

The Division of Trading and Markets of the Commission, or any successor organizational unit, shall have a staff of examiners who shall—

(A) perform compliance inspections and examinations of entities under the jurisdiction of that Division; and

(B) report to the Director of that Division.

(2) Division of Investment Management

The Division of Investment Management of the Commission, or any successor organizational unit, shall have a staff of examiners who shall—

(A) perform compliance inspections and examinations of entities under the jurisdiction of that Division; and

(B) report to the Director of that Division.

(i) Securities and Exchange Commission Reserve Fund

(1) Reserve Fund established

There is established in the Treasury of the United States a separate fund, to be known as the "Securities and Exchange Commission Reserve Fund" (referred to in this subsection as the "Reserve Fund").

(2) Reserve Fund amounts

(A) In general

Except as provided in subparagraph (B), any registration fees collected by the Commission under section 77f(b) of this title or section 80a-24(f) of this title shall be deposited into the Reserve Fund.

(B) Limitations

For any 1 fiscal year—

(i) the amount deposited in the Fund may not exceed \$50,000,000; and

(ii) the balance in the Fund may not exceed \$100,000,000.

(C) Excess fees

Any amounts in excess of the limitations described in subparagraph (B) that the Commission collects from registration fees under section 77f(b) of this title or section 80a-24(f) of this title shall be deposited in the General Fund of the Treasury of the United States and shall not be available for obligation by the Commission.

(3) Use of amounts in Reserve Fund

The Commission may obligate amounts in the Reserve Fund, not to exceed a total of \$100,000,000 in any 1 fiscal year, as the Commission determines is necessary to carry out the functions of the Commission. Any amounts in the reserve fund shall remain available until expended. Not later than 10 days after the date on which the Commission obligates amounts under this paragraph, the Commission shall notify Congress of the date, amount, and purpose of the obligation.

(4) Rule of construction

Amounts collected and deposited in the Reserve Fund shall not be construed to be Government funds or appropriated monies and shall not be subject to apportionment for the purpose of chapter 15 of title 31 or under any other authority.

(j) Office of the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation

(1) Office established

There is established within the Commission the Office of the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation (hereafter in this subsection referred to as the "Office").

(2) Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation

(A) In general

The head of the Office shall be the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation, who shall—

- (i) report directly to the Commission; and
- (ii) be appointed by the Commission, from among individuals having experience in advocating for the interests of small businesses and encouraging small business capital formation.

(B) Compensation

The annual rate of pay for the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation shall be equal to the highest rate of annual pay for other senior executives who report directly to the Commission.

(C) No current employee of the Commission

An individual may not be appointed as the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation if the individual is currently employed by the Commission.

(3) Staff of Office

The Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation, after consultation with the Commission, may retain or employ independent counsel, research staff, and service staff, as the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation determines to be necessary to carry out the functions of the Office.

(4) Functions of the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation

The Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation shall—

- (A) assist small businesses and small business investors in resolving significant problems such businesses and investors may have with the Commission or with self-regulatory organizations;
- (B) identify areas in which small businesses and small business investors would benefit from changes in the regulations of the Commission or the rules of self-regulatory organizations;
- (C) identify problems that small businesses have with securing access to capital, including any unique challenges to minority-owned small businesses, women-owned small businesses, and small businesses affected by hurricanes or other natural disasters;
- (D) analyze the potential impact on small businesses and small business investors of—
 - (i) proposed regulations of the Commission that are likely to have a significant economic impact on small businesses and small business capital formation; and
 - (ii) proposed rules that are likely to have a significant economic impact on small businesses and small business capital formation of self-regulatory organizations registered under this chapter;
- (E) conduct outreach to small businesses and small business investors, including through regional roundtables, in order to solicit views on relevant capital formation issues;
- (F) to the extent practicable, propose to the Commission changes in the regulations or orders of the Commission and to Congress any legislative, administrative, or personnel changes that may be appropriate to mitigate problems identified under this paragraph and to promote the interests of small businesses and small business investors;
- (G) consult with the Investor Advocate on proposed recommendations made under subparagraph (F); and
- (H) advise the Investor Advocate on issues related to small businesses and small business investors.

(5) Access to documents

The Commission shall ensure that the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation has full access to the documents and information of the Commission and any self-regulatory organization, as necessary to carry out the functions of the Office.

(6) Annual report on activities

(A) In general

Not later than December 31 of each year after 2015, the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives a report on the activities of the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation during the immediately preceding fiscal year.

(B) Contents

Each report required under subparagraph (A) shall include—

- (i) appropriate statistical information and full and substantive analysis;
- (ii) information on steps that the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation has taken during the reporting period to improve small business services and the responsiveness of the Commission and self-regulatory organizations to small business and small business investor concerns;
- (iii) a summary of the most serious issues encountered by small businesses and small business investors, including any unique issues encountered by minority-owned small businesses, women-owned small businesses, and small businesses affected by hurricanes or other natural disasters and their investors, during the reporting period;
- (iv) an inventory of the items summarized under clause (iii) (including items summarized under such clause for any prior reporting period on which no action has been taken or that have not been resolved to the satisfaction of the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation as of the beginning of the reporting period covered by the report) that includes—
 - (I) identification of any action taken by the Commission or the self-regulatory organization and the result of such action;
 - (II) the length of time that each item has remained on such inventory; and
 - (III) for items on which no action has been taken, the reasons for inaction, and an identification of any official who is responsible for such action;
- (v) recommendations for such changes to the regulations, guidance and orders of the Commission and such legislative actions as may be appropriate to resolve problems with the Commission and self-regulatory organizations encountered by small businesses and small business investors and to encourage small business capital formation; and
- (vi) any other information, as determined appropriate by the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation.

(C) Confidentiality

No report required by subparagraph (A) may contain confidential information.

(D) Independence

Each report required under subparagraph (A) shall be provided directly to the committees of Congress listed in such subparagraph without any prior review or comment from the Commission, any commissioner, any other officer or employee of the Commission, or the Office of Management and Budget.

(7) Regulations

The Commission shall establish procedures requiring a formal response to all recommendations submitted to the Commission by the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation, not later than 3 months after the date of such submission.

(8) Government-Business Forum on Small Business Capital Formation

The Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation shall be responsible for planning, organizing, and executing the annual Government-Business Forum on Small Business Capital Formation described in section 80c–1 of this title.

(9) Rule of construction

Nothing in this subsection may be construed as replacing or reducing the responsibilities of the Investor Advocate with respect to small business investors.

(k) Open data publication

All public data assets published by the Commission under the securities laws and the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (Public Law 111–203; 124 Stat. 1376) shall be—

- (1) made available as an open Government data asset (as defined in section 3502 of title 44);
- (2) freely available for download;
- (3) rendered in a human-readable format; and
- (4) accessible via application programming interface where appropriate.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §4, 48 Stat. 885; Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, title XI, §1106(a), 63 Stat. 972; Pub. L. 86–619, §3, July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 408; Pub. L. 86–771, Sept. 13, 1960, 74 Stat. 913; Pub. L. 88–426, title III, §305(20), Aug. 14, 1964, 78 Stat. 425; Pub. L. 98–38, §1, June 6, 1983, 97 Stat. 205; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §307, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1254; Pub. L. 101–550, title I, §103, title II, §207, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2713, 2721; Pub. L. 104–290, title IV, §406, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3444; Pub. L. 105–353, title II, §203, Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3234; Pub. L. 107–123, §8(d)(2), Jan. 16, 2002, 115 Stat. 2399; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §§915, 919D, 965, 991(e)(1), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1830, 1840, 1911, 1954; Pub. L. 114–284, §2(a), Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1447; Pub. L. 115–141, div. S, title IX, §902, Mar. 23, 2018, 132 Stat. 1143; Pub. L. 117–263, div. E, title LVIII, §5822, Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3427.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (g)(4)(D)(ii), and (j)(4)(D)(ii), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, referred to in subsec. (k), is Pub. L. 111–203, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1376, which enacted chapter 53 (§5301 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and chapters 108 (§8201 et seq.) and 109 (§8301 et seq.) of this title, and enacted, amended, and repealed numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 5301 of Title 12 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 117–263 added subsec. (k).

2018—Subsec. (j)(4)(C), (6)(B)(iii). Pub. L. 115–141 substituted "minority-owned small businesses, women-owned small businesses, and small businesses affected by hurricanes or other natural disasters" for "minority-owned and women-owned small businesses".

2016—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 114–284 added subsec. (j).

2010—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–203, §915, added subsec. (g).

Subsec. (g)(8). Pub. L. 111–203, §919D, added par. (8).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 111–203, §965, added subsec. (h).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 111–203, §991(e)(1), added subsec. (i).

2002—Subsec. (b)(1), (2). Pub. L. 107–123 added pars. (1) and (2) and struck out former pars. (1) and (2), which authorized the Commission to appoint and compensate officers, attorneys, examiners, and other experts as needed, and to select, appoint, and compensate professional economists.

1998—Subsec. (b)(2), (3). Pub. L. 105–353 added par. (2) and redesignated former par. (2) as (3).

1996—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104–290 inserted before period at end "and the Commission may also specify the time that such fee shall be determined and paid relative to the filing of any statement or document with the Commission".

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101–550, §103, inserted heading, designated existing provision as par. (1) and inserted heading, and added par. (2).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101–550, §207, added subsec. (f).

1987—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100–181 added subsec. (e).

1983—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 98–38 added subsecs. (c) and (d).

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88–426 repealed provisions which prescribed the compensation of the Chairman and the Commissioners.

1960—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 86–771 authorized the chairman to receive an additional \$500 a year.

Pub. L. 86–619 increased the salary of each commissioner from \$15,000 to \$20,000 a year, and provided for continuation in office of a commissioner upon termination of his term until a successor is appointed and has qualified, not beyond expiration of next session of Congress subsequent to the expiration of said fixed term of office.

1949—Subsec. (b). Act Oct. 28, 1949, substituted "Classification Act of 1949" for "Classification Act of 1923".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 915, 919D, and 965 of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §991(e)(2), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1955, provided that: "The amendment made by this subsection [amending this section] shall take effect on October 1, 2011."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 107–123 effective Oct. 1, 2001, see section 11 of Pub. L. 107–123, set out as a note under section 78ee of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

For effective date of amendment by Pub. L. 88–426, see section 501 of Pub. L. 88–426.

REPEALS

Act Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, set out in the credit of this section, was repealed (subject to a savings clause) by Pub. L. 89–554, Sept. 6, 1966, §8, 80 Stat. 632, 655.

RULE OF CONSTRUCTION—NO NEW DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS

Amendment by Pub. L. 117–263 not to be construed to require certain additional information to be collected or disclosed, see section 5826 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out as a note under section 77g of this title.

OUTREACH BY THE COMMISSION

Pub. L. 112–106, title VII, §701, Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 327, provided that: "The Securities and Exchange Commission shall provide online information and conduct outreach to inform small and medium sized businesses, women owned businesses, veteran owned businesses, and minority owned businesses of the changes made by this Act [see Short Title of 2012 Amendment note set out under section 78a of this title]."

PAY AUTHORITY FOR EMPLOYMENT OF EXPERTS AND CONSULTANTS

Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §929G(c), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1856, provided that: "The [Securities and Exchange] Commission may set the rate of pay for experts and consultants appointed under the authority of section 3109 of title 5, United States Code, in the same manner in which it sets the rate of pay for employees of the Commission."

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out below.

1950 REORGANIZATION PLAN NO. 10

15 F.R. 3175, 64 STAT. 1265

Prepared by the President and transmitted to the Senate and the House of Representatives in Congress assembled, March 13, 1950, pursuant to the provisions of the Reorganization Act of 1949, approved June

20, 1949 [see 5 U.S.C. 901 et seq.].

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

SECTION 1. TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS TO THE CHAIRMAN

(a) Subject to the provisions of subsection (b) of this section there are hereby transferred from the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereinafter referred to as the Commission, to the Chairman of the Commission, hereinafter referred to as the Chairman, the executive and administrative functions of the Commission, including functions of the Commission with respect to (1) the appointment and supervision of personnel employed under the Commission, (2) the distribution of business among such personnel and among administrative units of the Commission, and (3) the use and expenditure of funds.

(b)(1) In carrying out any of his functions under the provisions of this section the Chairman shall be governed by general policies of the Commission and by such regulatory decisions, findings, and determinations as the Commission may by law be authorized to make.

(2) The appointment by the Chairman of the heads of major administrative units under the Commission shall be subject to the approval of the Commission.

(3) Personnel employed regularly and full time in the immediate offices of Commissioners other than the Chairman shall not be affected by the provisions of this reorganization plan.

(4) There are hereby reserved to the Commission its functions with respect to revising budget estimates and with respect to determining upon the distribution of appropriated funds according to major programs and purposes.

SEC. 2. PERFORMANCE OF TRANSFERRED FUNCTIONS

The Chairman may from time to time make such provisions as he shall deem appropriate authorizing the performance by any officer, employee, or administrative unit under his jurisdiction of any function transferred to the Chairman by the provisions of section 1 of this reorganization plan.

SEC. 3. DESIGNATION OF CHAIRMAN

The functions of the Commission with respect to choosing a Chairman from among the Commissioners composing the Commission are hereby transferred to the President.

MESSAGE OF THE PRESIDENT

To the Congress of the United States:

I transmit herewith Reorganization Plan No. 10 of 1950, prepared in accordance with the Reorganization Act of 1949 and providing for reorganizations in the Securities and Exchange Commission. My reasons for transmitting this plan are stated in an accompanying general message.

After investigation I have found and hereby declare that each reorganization included in Reorganization Plan No. 10 of 1950 is necessary to accomplish one or more of the purposes set forth in section 2(a) of the Reorganization Act of 1949.

The taking effect of the reorganizations included in this plan may not in itself result in substantial immediate savings. However, many benefits in improved operations are probable during the next years which will result in a reduction in expenditures as compared with those that would be otherwise necessary. An itemization of these reductions in advance of actual experience under this plan is not practicable.

HARRY S. TRUMAN.

¹ So in original. Probably should be "Notwithstanding".

² So in original. Probably should be "(2)(A)(ii).".

§78d-1. Delegation of functions by Commission

(a) Authorization; functions delegable; eligible persons; application of other laws

In addition to its existing authority, the Securities and Exchange Commission shall have the authority to delegate, by published order or rule, any of its functions to a division of the Commission, an individual Commissioner, an administrative law judge, or an employee or employee board, including functions with respect to hearing, determining, ordering, certifying, reporting, or

otherwise acting as to any work, business, or matter. Nothing in this section shall be deemed to supersede the provisions of section 556(b) of title 5, or to authorize the delegation of the function of rulemaking as defined in subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5, with reference to general rules as distinguished from rules of particular applicability, or of the making of any rule pursuant to section 78s(c) of this title.

(b) Right of review; procedure

With respect to the delegation of any of its functions, as provided in subsection (a) of this section, the Commission shall retain a discretionary right to review the action of any such division of the Commission, individual Commissioner, administrative law judge, employee, or employee board, upon its own initiative or upon petition of a party to or intervenor in such action, within such time and in such manner as the Commission by rule shall prescribe. The vote of one member of the Commission shall be sufficient to bring any such action before the Commission for review. A person or party shall be entitled to review by the Commission if he or it is adversely affected by action at a delegated level which (1) denies any request for action pursuant to section 77h(a) or section 77h(c) of this title or the first sentence of section 78l(d) of this title; (2) suspends trading in a security pursuant to section 78l(k) of this title; or (3) is pursuant to any provision of this chapter in a case of adjudication, as defined in section 551 of title 5, not required by this chapter to be determined on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing (except to the extent there is involved a matter described in section 554(a)(1) through (6) of such title 5).

(c) Finality of delegated action

If the right to exercise such review is declined, or if no such review is sought within the time stated in the rules promulgated by the Commission, then the action of any such division of the Commission, individual Commissioner, administrative law judge, employee, or employee board, shall, for all purposes, including appeal or review thereof, be deemed the action of the Commission.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §4A, as added Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §308(a), Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1254.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 78d–1, Pub. L. 87–592, §1, Aug. 20, 1962, 76 Stat. 394; Pub. L. 94–29, §25, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 163; Pub. L. 95–251, §2(a)(4), Mar. 27, 1978, 92 Stat. 183, provided for subject matter similar to the provisions comprising this section, prior to repeal by section 308(b) of Pub. L. 100–181.

§78d–2. Transfer of functions with respect to assignment of personnel to chairman

In addition to the functions transferred by the provisions of Reorganization Plan Numbered 10 of 1950 (64 Stat. 1265), there are hereby transferred from the Commission to the Chairman of the Commission the functions of the Commission with respect to the assignment of Commission personnel, including Commissioners, to perform such functions as may have been delegated by the Commission to the Commission personnel, including Commissioners, pursuant to section 78d–1 of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §4B, as added Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §308(a), Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1255.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan Numbered 10 of 1950 (64 Stat. 1265), referred to in text, is set out as a note under section 78d of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 78d-2, Pub. L. 87-592, §2, Aug. 20, 1962, 76 Stat. 395, provided for subject matter similar to the provisions comprising this section, prior to repeal by section 308(b) of Pub. L. 100-181.

§78d-3. Appearance and practice before the Commission

(a) Authority to censure

The Commission may censure any person, or deny, temporarily or permanently, to any person the privilege of appearing or practicing before the Commission in any way, if that person is found by the Commission, after notice and opportunity for hearing in the matter—

- (1) not to possess the requisite qualifications to represent others;
- (2) to be lacking in character or integrity, or to have engaged in unethical or improper professional conduct; or
- (3) to have willfully violated, or willfully aided and abetted the violation of, any provision of the securities laws or the rules and regulations issued thereunder.

(b) Definition

With respect to any registered public accounting firm or associated person, for purposes of this section, the term "improper professional conduct" means—

- (1) intentional or knowing conduct, including reckless conduct, that results in a violation of applicable professional standards; and
- (2) negligent conduct in the form of—
 - (A) a single instance of highly unreasonable conduct that results in a violation of applicable professional standards in circumstances in which the registered public accounting firm or associated person knows, or should know, that heightened scrutiny is warranted; or
 - (B) repeated instances of unreasonable conduct, each resulting in a violation of applicable professional standards, that indicate a lack of competence to practice before the Commission.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §4C, as added Pub. L. 107-204, title VI, §602, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 794.)

§78d-4. Additional duties of Inspector General

(a) Suggestion submissions by Commission employees

(1) Hotline established

The Inspector General of the Commission shall establish and maintain a telephone hotline or other electronic means for the receipt of—

- (A) suggestions by employees of the Commission for improvements in the work efficiency, effectiveness, and productivity, and the use of the resources, of the Commission; and
- (B) allegations by employees of the Commission of waste, abuse, misconduct, or mismanagement within the Commission.

(2) Confidentiality

The Inspector General shall maintain as confidential—

- (A) the identity of any individual who provides information by the means established under paragraph (1), unless the individual requests otherwise, in writing; and
- (B) at the request of any such individual, any specific information provided by the individual.

(b) Consideration of reports

The Inspector General shall consider any suggestions or allegations received by the means established under subsection (a)(1), and shall recommend appropriate action in relation to such suggestions or allegations.

(c) Recognition

The Inspector General may recognize any employee who makes a suggestion under subsection (a)(1) (or by other means) that would or does—

- (1) increase the work efficiency, effectiveness, or productivity of the Commission; or
- (2) reduce waste, abuse, misconduct, or mismanagement within the Commission.

(d) Report

The Inspector General of the Commission shall submit to Congress an annual report containing a description of—

- (1) the nature, number, and potential benefits of any suggestions received under subsection (a);
- (2) the nature, number, and seriousness of any allegations received under subsection (a);
- (3) any recommendations made or actions taken by the Inspector General in response to substantiated allegations received under subsection (a); and
- (4) any action the Commission has taken in response to suggestions or allegations received under subsection (a).

(e) Funding

The activities of the Inspector General under this subsection shall be funded by the Securities and Exchange Commission Investor Protection Fund established under section 78u–6 of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §4D, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §966, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1912.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

§78d–5. Deadline for completing enforcement investigations and compliance examinations and inspections

(a) Enforcement investigations

(1) In general

Not later than 180 days after the date on which Commission staff provide ¹ a written Wells notification to any person, the Commission staff shall either file an action against such person or provide notice to the Director of the Division of Enforcement of its intent to not file an action.

(2) Exceptions for certain complex actions

Notwithstanding paragraph (1), if the Director of the Division of Enforcement of the Commission or the Director's designee determines that a particular enforcement investigation is sufficiently complex such that a determination regarding the filing of an action against a person cannot be completed within the deadline specified in paragraph (1), the Director of the Division of Enforcement of the Commission or the Director's designee may, after providing notice to the Chairman of the Commission, extend such deadline as needed for one additional 180-day period. If after the additional 180-day period the Director of the Division of Enforcement of the Commission or the Director's designee determines that a particular enforcement investigation is sufficiently complex such that a determination regarding the filing of an action against a person cannot be completed within the additional 180-day period, the Director of the Division of Enforcement of the Commission or the Director's designee may, after providing notice to and receiving approval of the Commission, extend such deadline as needed for one or more additional successive 180-day periods.

(b) Compliance examinations and inspections

(1) In general

Not later than 180 days after the date on which Commission staff completes the on-site portion of its compliance examination or inspection or receives all records requested from the entity being examined or inspected, whichever is later, Commission staff shall provide the entity being examined or inspected with written notification indicating either that the examination or inspection has concluded, has concluded without findings, or that the staff requests the entity undertake corrective action.

(2) Exception for certain complex actions

Notwithstanding paragraph (1), if the head of any division or office within the Commission responsible for compliance examinations and inspections or his designee determines that a particular compliance examination or inspection is sufficiently complex such that a determination regarding concluding the examination or inspection, or regarding the staff requests the entity undertake corrective action, cannot be completed within the deadline specified in paragraph (1), the head of any division or office within the Commission responsible for compliance examinations and inspections or his designee may, after providing notice to the Chairman of the Commission, extend such deadline as needed for one additional 180-day period.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §4E, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §929U, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1867.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

¹ So in original. Probably should be "provides".

§78d–6. Report and certification of internal supervisory controls

(a) Annual reports and certification

Not later than 90 days after the end of each fiscal year, the Commission shall submit a report to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives on the conduct by the Commission of examinations of registered entities, enforcement investigations, and review of corporate financial securities filings.

(b) Contents of reports

Each report under subsection (a) shall contain—

(1) an assessment, as of the end of the most recent fiscal year, of the effectiveness of—

(A) the internal supervisory controls of the Commission; and

(B) the procedures of the Commission applicable to the staff of the Commission who perform examinations of registered entities, enforcement investigations, and reviews of corporate financial securities filings;

(2) a certification that the Commission has adequate internal supervisory controls to carry out the duties of the Commission described in paragraph (1)(B); and

(3) a summary by the Comptroller General of the United States of the review carried out under subsection (d).¹

(c) Certification

(1) Signature

The certification under subsection (b)(2) shall be signed by the Director of the Division of Enforcement, the Director of the Division of Corporation Finance, and the Director of the Office of Compliance Inspections and Examinations (or the head of any successor division or office).

(2) Content of certification

Each individual described in paragraph (1) shall certify that the individual—

(A) is directly responsible for establishing and maintaining the internal supervisory controls of the Division or Office of which the individual is the head;

(B) is knowledgeable about the internal supervisory controls of the Division or Office of which the individual is the head;

(C) has evaluated the effectiveness of the internal supervisory controls during the 90-day period ending on the final day of the fiscal year to which the report relates; and

(D) has disclosed to the Commission any significant deficiencies in the design or operation of internal supervisory controls that could adversely affect the ability of the Division or Office to consistently conduct inspections, or investigations, or reviews of filings with professional competence and integrity.

(d) New Director or Acting Director

Notwithstanding subsection (a), if the Director of the Division of Enforcement, the Director of the Division of Corporate Finance, or the Director of the Office of Compliance Inspections and Examinations has served as Director of the Division or Office for less than 90 days on the date on which a report is required to be submitted under subsection (a), the Commission may submit the report on the date on which the Director has served as Director for 90 days. If there is no Director of the Division of Enforcement, the Division of Corporate Finance, or the Office of Compliance Inspections and Examinations, on the date on which a report is required to be submitted under subsection (a), the Acting Director of the Division or Office may make the certification required under subsection (c).

(e) Review by the Comptroller General

(1) Report

The Comptroller General of the United States shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives a report that contains a review of the adequacy and effectiveness of the internal supervisory control structure and procedures described in subsection (b)(1), not less frequently than once every 3 years, at a time to coincide with the publication of the reports of the Commission under this section.

(2) Authority to hire experts

The Comptroller General of the United States may hire independent consultants with specialized expertise in any area relevant to the duties of the Comptroller General described in this section, in order to assist the Comptroller General in carrying out such duties.

(Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §961, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1907.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Investor Protection and Securities Reform Act of 2010 and also as part of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, and not as part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203,

set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

DEFINITIONS

For definitions of terms used in this section, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

¹ So in original. Probably should be "(e)."

§78d–7. Triennial report on personnel management

(a) Triennial report required

Once every 3 years, the Comptroller General of the United States shall submit a report to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives on the quality of personnel management by the Commission.

(b) Contents of report

Each report under subsection (a) shall include—

(1) an evaluation of—

(A) the effectiveness of supervisors in using the skills, talents, and motivation of the employees of the Commission to achieve the goals of the Commission;

(B) the criteria for promoting employees of the Commission to supervisory positions;

(C) the fairness of the application of the promotion criteria to the decisions of the Commission;

(D) the competence of the professional staff of the Commission;

(E) the efficiency of communication between the units of the Commission regarding the work of the Commission (including communication between divisions and between subunits of a division) and the efforts by the Commission to promote such communication;

(F) the turnover within subunits of the Commission, including the consideration of supervisors whose subordinates have an unusually high rate of turnover;

(G) whether there are excessive numbers of low-level, mid-level, or senior-level managers;

(H) any initiatives of the Commission that increase the competence of the staff of the Commission;

(I) the actions taken by the Commission regarding employees of the Commission who have failed to perform their duties and circumstances under which the Commission has issued to employees a notice of termination; and

(J) such other factors relating to the management of the Commission as the Comptroller General determines are appropriate;

(2) an evaluation of any improvements made with respect to the areas described in paragraph

(1) since the date of submission of the previous report; and

(3) recommendations for how the Commission can use the human resources of the Commission more effectively and efficiently to carry out the mission of the Commission.

(c) Consultation

In preparing the report under subsection (a), the Comptroller General shall consult with current employees of the Commission, retired employees and other former employees of the Commission, the Inspector General of the Commission, persons that have business before the Commission, any union representing the employees of the Commission, private management consultants, academics, and any other source that the Comptroller General deems appropriate.

(d) Report by Commission

Not later than 90 days after the date on which the Comptroller General submits each report under subsection (a), the Commission shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives a

report describing the actions taken by the Commission in response to the recommendations contained in the report under subsection (a).

(e) Reimbursements for cost of reports

(1) Reimbursements required

The Commission shall reimburse the Government Accountability Office for the full cost of making the reports under this section, as billed therefor by the Comptroller General.

(2) Crediting and use of reimbursements

Such reimbursements shall—

(A) be credited to the appropriation account "Salaries and Expenses, Government Accountability Office" current when the payment is received; and

(B) remain available until expended.

(f) Authority to hire experts

The Comptroller General of the United States may hire independent consultants with specialized expertise in any area relevant to the duties of the Comptroller General described in this section, in order to assist the Comptroller General in carrying out such duties.

(Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §962, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1908.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Investor Protection and Securities Reform Act of 2010 and also as part of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, and not as part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

DEFINITION

For definition of "Commission" as used in this section, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

§78d–8. Annual financial controls audit

(a) Reports of Commission

(1) Annual reports required

Not later than 6 months after the end of each fiscal year, the Commission shall publish and submit to Congress a report that—

(A) describes the responsibility of the management of the Commission for establishing and maintaining an adequate internal control structure and procedures for financial reporting; and

(B) contains an assessment of the effectiveness of the internal control structure and procedures for financial reporting of the Commission during that fiscal year.

(2) Attestation

The reports required under paragraph (1) shall be attested to by the Chairman and chief financial officer of the Commission.

(b) Report by Comptroller General

(1) Report required

Not later than 6 months after the end of the first fiscal year after July 21, 2010, the Comptroller General of the United States shall submit a report to Congress that assesses—

(A) the effectiveness of the internal control structure and procedures of the Commission for financial reporting; and

(B) the assessment of the Commission under subsection (a)(1)(B).

(2) Attestation

The Comptroller General shall attest to, and report on, the assessment made by the Commission under subsection (a).

(c) Reimbursements for cost of reports

(1) Reimbursements required

The Commission shall reimburse the Government Accountability Office for the full cost of making the reports under subsection (b), as billed therefor by the Comptroller General.

(2) Crediting and use of reimbursements

Such reimbursements shall—

(A) be credited to the appropriation account "Salaries and Expenses, Government Accountability Office" current when the payment is received; and

(B) remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §963, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1910.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Investor Protection and Securities Reform Act of 2010 and also as part of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, and not as part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

DEFINITION

For definition of "Commission" as used in this section, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

§78d–9. Report on oversight of national securities associations

(a) Report required

Not later than 2 years after July 21, 2010, and every 3 years thereafter, the Comptroller General of the United States shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives a report that includes an evaluation of the oversight by the Commission of national securities associations registered under section 78o–3 of this title with respect to—

(1) the governance of such national securities associations, including the identification and management of conflicts of interest by such national securities associations, together with an analysis of the impact of any conflicts of interest on the regulatory enforcement or rulemaking by such national securities associations;

(2) the examinations carried out by the national securities associations, including the expertise of the examiners;

(3) the executive compensation practices of such national securities associations;

- (4) the arbitration services provided by the national securities associations;
- (5) the review performed by national securities associations of advertising by the members of the national securities associations;
- (6) the cooperation with and assistance to State securities administrators by the national securities associations to promote investor protection;
- (7) how the funding of national securities associations is used to support the mission of the national securities associations, including—
 - (A) the methods of funding;
 - (B) the sufficiency of funds;
 - (C) how funds are invested by the national securities association pending use; and
 - (D) the impact of the methods, sufficiency, and investment of funds on regulatory enforcement by the national securities associations;
- (8) the policies regarding the employment of former employees of national securities associations by regulated entities;
- (9) the ongoing effectiveness of the rules of the national securities associations in achieving the goals of the rules;
- (10) the transparency of governance and activities of the national securities associations; and
- (11) any other issue that has an impact, as determined by the Comptroller General, on the effectiveness of such national securities associations in performing their mission and in dealing fairly with investors and members; ¹

(b) Reimbursements for cost of reports

(1) Reimbursements required

The Commission shall reimburse the Government Accountability Office for the full cost of making the reports under subsection (a), as billed therefor by the Comptroller General.

(2) Crediting and use of reimbursements

Such reimbursements shall—

- (A) be credited to the appropriation account "Salaries and Expenses, Government Accountability Office" current when the payment is received; and
- (B) remain available until expended.

(Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §964, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1910.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Investor Protection and Securities Reform Act of 2010 and also as part of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, and not as part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

DEFINITIONS

For definitions of terms used in this section, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

¹ *So in original. The semicolon probably should be a period.*

§78e. Transactions on unregistered exchanges

It shall be unlawful for any broker, dealer, or exchange, directly or indirectly, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce for the purpose of using any facility of an exchange within or subject to the jurisdiction of the United States to effect any transaction in a security, or to report any such transaction, unless such exchange (1) is registered as national securities exchange under section 78f of this title, or (2) is exempted from such registration upon application by the exchange because, in the opinion of the Commission, by reason of the limited volume of transactions effected on such exchange, it is not practicable and not necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors to require such registration.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §5, 48 Stat. 885.)

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§78f. National securities exchanges

(a) Registration; application

An exchange may be registered as a national securities exchange under the terms and conditions hereinafter provided in this section and in accordance with the provisions of section 78s(a) of this title, by filing with the Commission an application for registration in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe containing the rules of the exchange and such other information and documents as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(b) Determination by Commission requisite to registration of applicant as a national securities exchange

An exchange shall not be registered as a national securities exchange unless the Commission determines that—

(1) Such exchange is so organized and has the capacity to be able to carry out the purposes of this chapter and to comply, and (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78q(d) or 78s(g)(2) of this title) to enforce compliance by its members and persons associated with its members, with the provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and the rules of the exchange.

(2) Subject to the provisions of subsection (c) of this section, the rules of the exchange provide that any registered broker or dealer or natural person associated with a registered broker or dealer may become a member of such exchange and any person may become associated with a member thereof.

(3) The rules of the exchange assure a fair representation of its members in the selection of its directors and administration of its affairs and provide that one or more directors shall be representative of issuers and investors and not be associated with a member of the exchange, broker, or dealer.

(4) The rules of the exchange provide for the equitable allocation of reasonable dues, fees, and other charges among its members and issuers and other persons using its facilities.

(5) The rules of the exchange are designed to prevent fraudulent and manipulative acts and practices, to promote just and equitable principles of trade, to foster cooperation and coordination with persons engaged in regulating, clearing, settling, processing information with respect to, and facilitating transactions in securities, to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanism of a free and open market and a national market system, and, in general, to protect investors and the

public interest; and are not designed to permit unfair discrimination between customers, issuers, brokers, or dealers, or to regulate by virtue of any authority conferred by this chapter matters not related to the purposes of this chapter or the administration of the exchange.

(6) The rules of the exchange provide that (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78q(d) or 78s(g)(2) of this title) its members and persons associated with its members shall be appropriately disciplined for violation of the provisions of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, or the rules of the exchange, by expulsion, suspension, limitation of activities, functions, and operations, fine, censure, being suspended or barred from being associated with a member, or any other fitting sanction.

(7) The rules of the exchange are in accordance with the provisions of subsection (d) of this section, and in general, provide a fair procedure for the disciplining of members and persons associated with members, the denial of membership to any person seeking membership therein, the barring of any person from becoming associated with a member thereof, and the prohibition or limitation by the exchange of any person with respect to access to services offered by the exchange or a member thereof.

(8) The rules of the exchange do not impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(9)(A) The rules of the exchange prohibit the listing of any security issued in a limited partnership rollup transaction (as such term is defined in paragraphs (4) and (5) of section 78n(h) of this title), unless such transaction was conducted in accordance with procedures designed to protect the rights of limited partners, including—

(i) the right of dissenting limited partners to one of the following:

(I) an appraisal and compensation;

(II) retention of a security under substantially the same terms and conditions as the original issue;

(III) approval of the limited partnership rollup transaction by not less than 75 percent of the outstanding securities of each of the participating limited partnerships;

(IV) the use of a committee of limited partners that is independent, as determined in accordance with rules prescribed by the exchange, of the general partner or sponsor, that has been approved by a majority of the outstanding units of each of the participating limited partnerships, and that has such authority as is necessary to protect the interest of limited partners, including the authority to hire independent advisors, to negotiate with the general partner or sponsor on behalf of the limited partners, and to make a recommendation to the limited partners with respect to the proposed transaction; or

(V) other comparable rights that are prescribed by rule by the exchange and that are designed to protect dissenting limited partners;

(ii) the right not to have their voting power unfairly reduced or abridged;

(iii) the right not to bear an unfair portion of the costs of a proposed limited partnership rollup transaction that is rejected; and

(iv) restrictions on the conversion of contingent interests or fees into non-contingent interests or fees and restrictions on the receipt of a non-contingent equity interest in exchange for fees for services which have not yet been provided.

(B) As used in this paragraph, the term "dissenting limited partner" means a person who, on the date on which soliciting material is mailed to investors, is a holder of a beneficial interest in a limited partnership that is the subject of a limited partnership rollup transaction, and who casts a vote against the transaction and complies with procedures established by the exchange, except that for purposes of an exchange or tender offer, such person shall file an objection in writing under the rules of the exchange during the period during which the offer is outstanding.

(10)(A) The rules of the exchange prohibit any member that is not the beneficial owner of a security registered under section 78l of this title from granting a proxy to vote the security in connection with a shareholder vote described in subparagraph (B), unless the beneficial owner of

the security has instructed the member to vote the proxy in accordance with the voting instructions of the beneficial owner.

(B) A shareholder vote described in this subparagraph is a shareholder vote with respect to the election of a member of the board of directors of an issuer, executive compensation, or any other significant matter, as determined by the Commission, by rule, and does not include a vote with respect to the uncontested election of a member of the board of directors of any investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-1 et seq.].

(C) Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to prohibit a national securities exchange from prohibiting a member that is not the beneficial owner of a security registered under section 78l of this title from granting a proxy to vote the security in connection with a shareholder vote not described in subparagraph (A).

(c) Denial of membership in national exchanges; denial of association with member; conditions; limitation of membership

(1) A national securities exchange shall deny membership to (A) any person, other than a natural person, which is not a registered broker or dealer or (B) any natural person who is not, or is not associated with, a registered broker or dealer.

(2) A national securities exchange may, and in cases in which the Commission, by order, directs as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors shall, deny membership to any registered broker or dealer or natural person associated with a registered broker or dealer, and bar from becoming associated with a member any person, who is subject to a statutory disqualification. A national securities exchange shall file notice with the Commission not less than thirty days prior to admitting any person to membership or permitting any person to become associated with a member, if the exchange knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, that such person was subject to a statutory disqualification. The notice shall be in such form and contain such information as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(3)(A) A national securities exchange may deny membership to, or condition the membership of, a registered broker or dealer if (i) such broker or dealer does not meet such standards of financial responsibility or operational capability or such broker or dealer or any natural person associated with such broker or dealer does not meet such standards of training, experience, and competence as are prescribed by the rules of the exchange or (ii) such broker or dealer or person associated with such broker or dealer has engaged and there is a reasonable likelihood he may again engage in acts or practices inconsistent with just and equitable principles of trade. A national securities exchange may examine and verify the qualifications of an applicant to become a member and the natural persons associated with such an applicant in accordance with procedures established by the rules of the exchange.

(B) A national securities exchange may bar a natural person from becoming a member or associated with a member, or condition the membership of a natural person or association of a natural person with a member, if such natural person (i) does not meet such standards of training, experience, and competence as are prescribed by the rules of the exchange or (ii) has engaged and there is a reasonable likelihood he may again engage in acts or practices inconsistent with just and equitable principles of trade. A national securities exchange may examine and verify the qualifications of an applicant to become a person associated with a member in accordance with procedures established by the rules of the exchange and require any person associated with a member, or any class of such persons, to be registered with the exchange in accordance with procedures so established.

(C) A national securities exchange may bar any person from becoming associated with a member if such person does not agree (i) to supply the exchange with such information with respect to its relationship and dealings with the member as may be specified in the rules of the exchange and (ii) to permit the examination of its books and records to verify the accuracy of any information so supplied.

(4) A national securities exchange may limit (A) the number of members of the exchange and (B) the number of members and designated representatives of members permitted to effect transactions

on the floor of the exchange without the services of another person acting as broker: *Provided, however,* That no national securities exchange shall have the authority to decrease the number of memberships in such exchange, or the number of members and designated representatives of members permitted to effect transactions on the floor of such exchange without the services of another person acting as broker, below such number in effect on May 1, 1975, or the date such exchange was registered with the Commission, whichever is later: *And provided further,* That the Commission, in accordance with the provisions of section 78s(c) of this title, may amend the rules of any national securities exchange to increase (but not to decrease) or to remove any limitation on the number of memberships in such exchange or the number of members or designated representatives of members permitted to effect transactions on the floor of the exchange without the services of another person acting as broker, if the Commission finds that such limitation imposes a burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(d) Discipline of national securities exchange members and persons associated with members; summary proceedings

(1) In any proceeding by a national securities exchange to determine whether a member or person associated with a member should be disciplined (other than a summary proceeding pursuant to paragraph (3) of this subsection), the exchange shall bring specific charges, notify such member or person of, and give him an opportunity to defend against, such charges, and keep a record. A determination by the exchange to impose a disciplinary sanction shall be supported by a statement setting forth—

(A) any act or practice in which such member or person associated with a member has been found to have engaged, or which such member or person has been found to have omitted;

(B) the specific provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, or the rules of the exchange which any such act or practice, or omission to act, is deemed to violate; and

(C) the sanction imposed and the reasons therefor.

(2) In any proceeding by a national securities exchange to determine whether a person shall be denied membership, barred from becoming associated with a member, or prohibited or limited with respect to access to services offered by the exchange or a member thereof (other than a summary proceeding pursuant to paragraph (3) of this subsection), the exchange shall notify such person of, and give him an opportunity to be heard upon, the specific grounds for denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation under consideration and keep a record. A determination by the exchange to deny membership, bar a person from becoming associated with a member, or prohibit or limit a person with respect to access to services offered by the exchange or a member thereof shall be supported by a statement setting forth the specific grounds on which the denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation is based.

(3) A national securities exchange may summarily (A) suspend a member or person associated with a member who has been and is expelled or suspended from any self-regulatory organization or barred or suspended from being associated with a member of any self-regulatory organization, (B) suspend a member who is in such financial or operating difficulty that the exchange determines and so notifies the Commission that the member cannot be permitted to continue to do business as a member with safety to investors, creditors, other members, or the exchange, or (C) limit or prohibit any person with respect to access to services offered by the exchange if subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph is applicable to such person or, in the case of a person who is not a member, if the exchange determines that such person does not meet the qualification requirements or other prerequisites for such access and such person cannot be permitted to continue to have such access with safety to investors, creditors, members, or the exchange. Any person aggrieved by any such summary action shall be promptly afforded an opportunity for a hearing by the exchange in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) or (2) of this subsection. The Commission, by order, may stay any such summary action on its own motion or upon application by any person aggrieved thereby, if the Commission determines summarily or after notice and opportunity for hearing (which hearing may consist solely of the submission of affidavits or presentation of oral arguments) that such stay is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors.

(e) Commissions, allowances, discounts, and other fees

(1) On and after June 4, 1975, no national securities exchange may impose any schedule or fix rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by its members: *Provided, however,* That until May 1, 1976, the preceding provisions of this paragraph shall not prohibit any such exchange from imposing or fixing any schedule of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by its members for acting as broker on the floor of the exchange or as odd-lot dealer: *And provided further,* That the Commission, in accordance with the provisions of section 78s(b) of this title as modified by the provisions of paragraph (3) of this subsection, may—

(A) permit a national securities exchange, by rule, to impose a reasonable schedule or fix reasonable rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by its members for effecting transactions on such exchange prior to November 1, 1976, if the Commission finds that such schedule or fixed rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees are in the public interest; and

(B) permit a national securities exchange, by rule, to impose a schedule or fix rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by its members for effecting transactions on such exchange after November 1, 1976, if the Commission finds that such schedule or fixed rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees (i) are reasonable in relation to the costs of providing the service for which such fees are charged (and the Commission publishes the standards employed in adjudging reasonableness) and (ii) do not impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, taking into consideration the competitive effects of permitting such schedule or fixed rates weighed against the competitive effects of other lawful actions which the Commission is authorized to take under this chapter.

(2) Notwithstanding the provisions of section 78s(c) of this title, the Commission, by rule, may abrogate any exchange rule which imposes a schedule or fixes rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees, if the Commission determines that such schedule or fixed rates are no longer reasonable, in the public interest, or necessary to accomplish the purposes of this chapter.

(3)(A) Before approving or disapproving any proposed rule change submitted by a national securities exchange which would impose a schedule or fix rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by its members for effecting transactions on such exchange, the Commission shall afford interested persons (i) an opportunity for oral presentation of data, views, and arguments and (ii) with respect to any such rule concerning transactions effected after November 1, 1976, if the Commission determines there are disputed issues of material fact, to present such rebuttal submissions and to conduct (or have conducted under subparagraph (B) of this paragraph) such cross-examination as the Commission determines to be appropriate and required for full disclosure and proper resolution of such disputed issues of material fact.

(B) The Commission shall prescribe rules and make rulings concerning any proceeding in accordance with subparagraph (A) of this paragraph designed to avoid unnecessary costs or delay. Such rules or rulings may (i) impose reasonable time limits on each interested person's oral presentations, and (ii) require any cross-examination to which a person may be entitled under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph to be conducted by the Commission on behalf of that person in such manner as the Commission determines to be appropriate and required for full disclosure and proper resolution of disputed issues of material fact.

(C)(i) If any class of persons, the members of which are entitled to conduct (or have conducted) cross-examination under subparagraphs (A) and (B) of this paragraph and which have, in the view of the Commission, the same or similar interests in the proceeding, cannot agree upon a single representative of such interests for purposes of cross-examination, the Commission may make rules and rulings specifying the manner in which such interests shall be represented and such cross-examination conducted.

(ii) No member of any class of persons with respect to which the Commission has specified the manner in which its interests shall be represented pursuant to clause (i) of this subparagraph shall be denied, pursuant to such clause (i), the opportunity to conduct (or have conducted) cross-examination

as to issues affecting his particular interests if he satisfies the Commission that he has made a reasonable and good faith effort to reach agreement upon group representation and there are substantial and relevant issues which would not be presented adequately by group representation.

(D) A transcript shall be kept of any oral presentation and cross-examination.

(E) In addition to the bases specified in section 78y(a) of this title, a reviewing Court may set aside an order of the Commission under section 78s(b) of this title approving an exchange rule imposing a schedule or fixing rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees, if the Court finds—

(1) a Commission determination under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph that an interested person is not entitled to conduct cross-examination or make rebuttal submissions, or

(2) a Commission rule or ruling under subparagraph (B) of this paragraph limiting the petitioner's cross-examination or rebuttal submissions,

has precluded full disclosure and proper resolution of disputed issues of material fact which were necessary for fair determination by the Commission.

(f) Compliance of non-members with exchange rules

The Commission, by rule or order, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, to maintain fair and orderly markets, or to assure equal regulation, may require—

(1) any person not a member or a designated representative of a member of a national securities exchange effecting transactions on such exchange without the services of another person acting as a broker, or

(2) any broker or dealer not a member of a national securities exchange effecting transactions on such exchange on a regular basis,

to comply with such rules of such exchange as the Commission may specify.

(g) Notice registration of security futures product exchanges

(1) Registration required

An exchange that lists or trades security futures products may register as a national securities exchange solely for the purposes of trading security futures products if—

(A) the exchange is a board of trade, as that term is defined by the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1a(2)) [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.], that has been designated a contract market by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission and such designation is not suspended by order of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission; and

(B) such exchange does not serve as a market place for transactions in securities other than—

(i) security futures products; or

(ii) futures on exempted securities or groups or indexes of securities or options thereon that have been authorized under section 2(a)(1)(C) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 2(a)(1)(C)].

(2) Registration by notice filing

(A) Form and content

An exchange required to register only because such exchange lists or trades security futures products may register for purposes of this section by filing with the Commission a written notice in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe containing the rules of the exchange and such other information and documents concerning such exchange, comparable to the information and documents required for national securities exchanges under subsection (a), as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. If such exchange has filed documents with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, to the extent that such documents contain information satisfying the Commission's informational requirements, copies of such documents may be filed with the Commission in lieu of the required written notice.

(B) Immediate effectiveness

Such registration shall be effective contemporaneously with the submission of notice, in written or electronic form, to the Commission, except that such registration shall not be effective if such registration would be subject to suspension or revocation.

(C) Termination

Such registration shall be terminated immediately if any of the conditions for registration set forth in this subsection are no longer satisfied.

(3) Public availability

The Commission shall promptly publish in the Federal Register an acknowledgment of receipt of all notices the Commission receives under this subsection and shall make all such notices available to the public.

(4) Exemption of exchanges from specified provisions

(A) Transaction exemptions

An exchange that is registered under paragraph (1) of this subsection shall be exempt from, and shall not be required to enforce compliance by its members with, and its members shall not, solely with respect to those transactions effected on such exchange in security futures products, be required to comply with, the following provisions of this chapter and the rules thereunder:

- (i) Subsections (b)(2), (b)(3), (b)(4), (b)(7), (b)(9), (c), (d), and (e) of this section.
- (ii) Section 78h of this title.
- (iii) Section 78k of this title.
- (iv) Subsections (d), (f), and (k) ¹ of section 78q of this title.
- (v) Subsections (a), (f), and (h) of section 78s of this title.

(B) Rule change exemptions

An exchange that registered under paragraph (1) of this subsection shall also be exempt from submitting proposed rule changes pursuant to section 78s(b) of this title, except that—

- (i) such exchange shall file proposed rule changes related to higher margin levels, fraud or manipulation, recordkeeping, reporting, listing standards, or decimal pricing for security futures products, sales practices for security futures products for persons who effect transactions in security futures products, or rules effectuating such exchange's obligation to enforce the securities laws pursuant to section 78s(b)(7) of this title;
- (ii) such exchange shall file pursuant to sections 78s(b)(1) and 78s(b)(2) of this title proposed rule changes related to margin, except for changes resulting in higher margin levels; and
- (iii) such exchange shall file pursuant to section 78s(b)(1) of this title proposed rule changes that have been abrogated by the Commission pursuant to section 78s(b)(7)(C) of this title.

(5) Trading in security futures products

(A) In general

Subject to subparagraph (B), it shall be unlawful for any person to execute or trade a security futures product until the later of—

- (i) 1 year after December 21, 2000; or
- (ii) such date that a futures association registered under section 17 of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 21] has met the requirements set forth in section 78o-3(k)(2) of this title.

(B) Principal-to-principal transactions

Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), a person may execute or trade a security futures product transaction if—

- (i) the transaction is entered into—

(I) on a principal-to-principal basis between parties trading for their own accounts or as described in section 1a(18)(B)(ii) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C.

1a(18)(B)(ii)]; and

(II) only between eligible contract participants (as defined in subparagraphs (A), (B)(ii), and (C) of such section 1a(18) [7 U.S.C. 1a(18)(A), (B)(ii), (C)]) at the time at which the persons enter into the agreement, contract, or transaction; and

(ii) the transaction is entered into on or after the later of—

(I) 8 months after December 21, 2000; or

(II) such date that a futures association registered under section 17 of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 21] has met the requirements set forth in section 78o-3(k)(2) of this title.

(h) Trading in security futures products

(1) Trading on exchange or association required

It shall be unlawful for any person to effect transactions in security futures products that are not listed on a national securities exchange or a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(a) of this title.

(2) Listing standards required

Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (7), a national securities exchange or a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(a) of this title may trade only security futures products that (A) conform with listing standards that such exchange or association files with the Commission under section 78s(b) of this title and (B) meet the criteria specified in section 2(a)(1)(D)(i) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 2(a)(1)(D)(i)].

(3) Requirements for listing standards and conditions for trading

Such listing standards shall—

(A) except as otherwise provided in a rule, regulation, or order issued pursuant to paragraph (4), require that any security underlying the security future, including each component security of a narrow-based security index, be registered pursuant to section 78l of this title;

(B) require that if the security futures product is not cash settled, the market on which the security futures product is traded have arrangements in place with a registered clearing agency for the payment and delivery of the securities underlying the security futures product;

(C) be no less restrictive than comparable listing standards for options traded on a national securities exchange or national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(a) of this title;

(D) except as otherwise provided in a rule, regulation, or order issued pursuant to paragraph (4), require that the security future be based upon common stock and such other equity securities as the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission jointly determine appropriate;

(E) require that the security futures product is cleared by a clearing agency that has in place provisions for linked and coordinated clearing with other clearing agencies that clear security futures products, which permits the security futures product to be purchased on one market and offset on another market that trades such product;

(F) require that only a broker or dealer subject to suitability rules comparable to those of a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(a) of this title effect transactions in the security futures product;

(G) require that the security futures product be subject to the prohibition against dual trading in section 4j of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 6j) and the rules and regulations thereunder or the provisions of section 78k(a) of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder, except to the extent otherwise permitted under this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder;

(H) require that trading in the security futures product not be readily susceptible to

manipulation of the price of such security futures product, nor to causing or being used in the manipulation of the price of any underlying security, option on such security, or option on a group or index including such securities;

(I) require that procedures be in place for coordinated surveillance among the market on which the security futures product is traded, any market on which any security underlying the security futures product is traded, and other markets on which any related security is traded to detect manipulation and insider trading;

(J) require that the market on which the security futures product is traded has in place audit trails necessary or appropriate to facilitate the coordinated surveillance required in subparagraph (I);

(K) require that the market on which the security futures product is traded has in place procedures to coordinate trading halts between such market and any market on which any security underlying the security futures product is traded and other markets on which any related security is traded; and

(L) require that the margin requirements for a security futures product comply with the regulations prescribed pursuant to section 78g(c)(2)(B) of this title, except that nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed to prevent a national securities exchange or national securities association from requiring higher margin levels for a security futures product when it deems such action to be necessary or appropriate.

(4) Authority to modify certain listing standard requirements

(A) Authority to modify

The Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, by rule, regulation, or order, may jointly modify the listing standard requirements specified in subparagraph (A) or (D) of paragraph (3) to the extent such modification fosters the development of fair and orderly markets in security futures products, is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, and is consistent with the protection of investors.

(B) Authority to grant exemptions

The Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, by order, may jointly exempt any person from compliance with the listing standard requirement specified in subparagraph (E) of paragraph (3) to the extent such exemption fosters the development of fair and orderly markets in security futures products, is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, and is consistent with the protection of investors.

(5) Requirements for other persons trading security future products

It shall be unlawful for any person (other than a national securities exchange or a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(a) of this title) to constitute, maintain, or provide a marketplace or facilities for bringing together purchasers and sellers of security future products or to otherwise perform with respect to security future products the functions commonly performed by a stock exchange as that term is generally understood, unless a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(a) of this title or a national securities exchange of which such person is a member—

(A) has in place procedures for coordinated surveillance among such person, the market trading the securities underlying the security future products, and other markets trading related securities to detect manipulation and insider trading;

(B) has rules to require audit trails necessary or appropriate to facilitate the coordinated surveillance required in subparagraph (A); and

(C) has rules to require such person to coordinate trading halts with markets trading the securities underlying the security future products and other markets trading related securities.

(6) Deferral of options on security futures trading

No person shall offer to enter into, enter into, or confirm the execution of any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on a security future, except that, after 3 years after December 21, 2000, the

Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission may by order jointly determine to permit trading of puts, calls, straddles, options, or privileges on any security future authorized to be traded under the provisions of this chapter and the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.].

(7) Deferral of linked and coordinated clearing

(A) Notwithstanding paragraph (2), until the compliance date, a national securities exchange or national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(a) of this title may trade a security futures product that does not—

- (i) conform with any listing standard promulgated to meet the requirement specified in subparagraph (E) of paragraph (3); or
- (ii) meet the criterion specified in section 2(a)(1)(D)(i)(IV) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 2(a)(1)(D)(i)(IV)].

(B) The Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall jointly publish in the Federal Register a notice of the compliance date no later than 165 days before the compliance date.

(C) For purposes of this paragraph, the term "compliance date" means the later of—

- (i) 180 days after the end of the first full calendar month period in which the average aggregate comparable share volume for all security futures products based on single equity securities traded on all national securities exchanges, any national securities associations registered pursuant to section 78o-3(a) of this title, and all other persons equals or exceeds 10 percent of the average aggregate comparable share volume of options on single equity securities traded on all national securities exchanges and any national securities associations registered pursuant to section 78o-3(a) of this title; or
- (ii) 2 years after the date on which trading in any security futures product commences under this chapter.

(i) Rules to avoid duplicative regulation of dual registrants

Consistent with this chapter, each national securities exchange registered pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall issue such rules as are necessary to avoid duplicative or conflicting rules applicable to any broker or dealer registered with the Commission pursuant to section 78o(b) of this title (except paragraph (11) thereof), that is also registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission pursuant to section 4f(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 6f(a)] (except paragraph (2) thereof), with respect to the application of—

- (1) rules of such national securities exchange of the type specified in section 78o(c)(3)(B) of this title involving security futures products; and
- (2) similar rules of national securities exchanges registered pursuant to subsection (g) and national securities associations registered pursuant to section 78o-3(k) of this title involving security futures products.

(j) Procedures and rules for security future products

A national securities exchange registered pursuant to subsection (a) shall implement the procedures specified in subsection (h)(5)(A) and adopt the rules specified in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of subsection (h)(5) not later than 8 months after the date of receipt of a request from an alternative trading system for such implementation and rules.

(k) Rules relating to security futures products traded on foreign boards of trade

(1) To the extent necessary or appropriate in the public interest, to promote fair competition, and consistent with the promotion of market efficiency, innovation, and expansion of investment opportunities, the protection of investors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall jointly issue such rules, regulations, or orders as are necessary and appropriate to permit the offer and sale of a security futures product traded on or subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade to United States persons.

- (2) The rules, regulations, or orders adopted under paragraph (1) shall take into account, as

appropriate, the nature and size of the markets that the securities underlying the security futures product reflect.

(I) Security-based swaps

It shall be unlawful for any person to effect a transaction in a security-based swap with or for a person that is not an eligible contract participant, unless such transaction is effected on a national securities exchange registered pursuant to subsection (b).

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §6, 48 Stat. 885; Pub. L. 94–29, §4, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 104; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §§309–312, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1255; Pub. L. 103–202, title III, §303(b), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2365; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §§202(a), 206(a), (i), (k)(2), (l)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–416, 2763A–426, 2763A–433, 2763A–434; Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §§721(e)(8), 734(b)(2), 763(e), title IX, §957, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1671, 1718, 1777, 1906.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b) to (e), (g)(4)(A), (h)(3)(G), (7)(C)(ii), and (i), was in the original "this title". This chapter, referred to in subsec. (h)(6), was in the original "this Act". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Investment Company Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (b)(10)(B), is title I of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 789, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§80a–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80a–51 of this title and Tables.

The Commodity Exchange Act, referred to in subsecs. (g)(1)(A) and (h)(6), is act Sept. 21, 1922, ch. 369, 42 Stat. 998, which is classified generally to chapter 1 (§1 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. Section 1a(2) of Title 7 was redesignated section 1a(6) by Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §721(a)(1), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1658. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1 of Title 7 and Tables.

Subsection (k) of section 78q of this title, referred to in subsec. (g)(4)(A)(iv), was redesignated subsec. (j) by Pub. L. 111–203, title VI, §617(a)(2), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1616.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (b)(9). Pub. L. 111–203, §957(1), designated introductory provisions and subpars. (A) to (D) as subpar. (A), redesignated former subpars. (A) to (D) as cls. (i) to (iv), respectively, of subpar. (A) and realigned margins, redesignated former cls. (i) to (v) of subpar. (A) as subcls. (I) to (V), respectively, of cl. (i) and realigned margins, and designated concluding provisions as subpar. (B).

Subsec. (b)(10). Pub. L. 111–203, §957(2), added par. (10).

Subsec. (g)(1)(A). Pub. L. 111–203, §734(b)(2), substituted "that has been designated" for "that—(i) has been designated" and "and" for "or" at end and struck out cl. (ii) which read as follows: "is registered as a derivative transaction execution facility under section 5a of the Commodity Exchange Act and such registration is not suspended by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission; and".

Subsec. (g)(5)(B)(i)(I). Pub. L. 111–203, §721(e)(8)(A), substituted "section 1a(18)(B)(ii)" for "section 1a(12)(B)(ii)".

Subsec. (g)(5)(B)(i)(II). Pub. L. 111–203, §721(e)(8)(B), substituted "section 1a(18)" for "section 1a(12)".

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 111–203, §763(e), added subsec. (l).

2000—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §202(a)], added subsec. (g).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(a)], added subsec. (h).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(i)], added subsec. (i).

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(k)(2)], added subsec. (j).

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(l)], added subsec. (k).

1993—Subsec. (b)(9). Pub. L. 103–202 added par. (9).

1987—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 100–181, §309, substituted "protection of investors shall" for "protection shall".

Subsec. (c)(3)(A). Pub. L. 100–181, §310, substituted "associated" for "association".

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 100–181, §311, substituted "may limit (A)" for "may (A) limit".

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 100–181, §312(1), substituted "paragraph (3) of this subsection" for "paragraph (4) of this section".

Subsec. (e)(3), (4). Pub. L. 100–181, §312(2), (3), redesignated par. (4) as (3) and, in subpar. (E), substituted "fixing" for "fixes" in introductory provisions, "subparagraph (A) of this paragraph" for "paragraph

(4)(A) of this subsection" in cl. (1), and "subparagraph (B) of this paragraph" for "paragraph (4)(B) of this subsection" in cl. (2), and struck out former par. (3) which read as follows: "Until December 31, 1976, the Commission, on a regular basis, shall file with the Speaker of the House and the President of the Senate information concerning the effect on the public interest, protection of investors, and maintenance of fair and orderly markets of the absence of any schedule or fixed rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by members of any national securities exchange for effecting transactions on such exchange."

1975—Pub. L. 94–29 restructured the entire section and, in addition, authorized the Commission to require an exchange to file such documents and information as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors and to prescribe the form and substance of an exchange's application for registration, expanded to eight the number of explicit statutory requirements that must be satisfied before an exchange may be registered as a national securities exchange, set forth the authority of a national securities exchange to admit or deny persons membership or association with members, prescribed exchange procedures for instituting disciplinary actions, denying membership, and summarily suspending members or persons associated with members, specified the authority of national securities exchanges to impose schedules or fix rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by its members for transacting business on the exchange, and empowered the Commission to regulate any broker or dealer who effects transactions on an exchange on a regular basis but who is not a member of that exchange and any person who effects transactions on an exchange without the services of another person acting as broker.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 957 of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by sections 721(e)(8) and 734(b)(2) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle A (§§711–754) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle A, see section 754 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 1a of Title 7, Agriculture.

Amendment by section 763(e) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 103–202, title III, §304, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2367, provided that:

"(a) **EFFECTIVE DATE.**—

"(1) **IN GENERAL.**—The amendments made by section 303 [amending this section and section 78o–3 of this title] shall become effective 12 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 17, 1993].

"(2) **RULEMAKING AUTHORITY.**—Notwithstanding paragraph (1), the authority of the Securities and Exchange Commission, a registered securities association, and a national securities exchange to commence rulemaking proceedings for the purpose of issuing rules pursuant to the amendments made by section 303 is effective on the date of enactment of this Act.

"(3) **REVIEW OF FILINGS PRIOR TO EFFECTIVE DATE.**—Prior to the effective date of regulations promulgated pursuant to this title [amending this section and sections 78n and 78o–3 of this title and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 78a and 78n of this title], the Securities and Exchange Commission shall continue to review and declare effective registration statements and amendments thereto relating to limited partnership rollup transactions in accordance with applicable regulations then in effect.

"(b) **EFFECT ON EXISTING AUTHORITY.**—The amendments made by this title [amending this section and sections 78n and 78o–3 of this title] shall not limit the authority of the Securities and Exchange Commission, a registered securities association, or a national securities exchange under any provision of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], or preclude the Commission or such association or exchange from imposing, under any other such provision, a remedy or procedure required to be imposed under such amendments."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94-29 effective June 4, 1975, except for amendment of subsecs. (a) through (d) by Pub. L. 94-29 to be effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, with provisions of subsecs. (b)(2) and (c)(6), as amended by Pub. L. 94-29, or rules or regulations thereunder, not to apply in a way so as to deprive any person of membership in any national securities exchange (or its successor) of which such person was, on June 4, 1975, a member or a member firm as defined in the constitution of such exchange, or so as to deny membership in any such exchange (or its successor) to a natural person who is or becomes associated with such member or member firm, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94-29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

CHANGES IN ORGANIZATION AND RULES OF NATIONAL SECURITIES EXCHANGES AND REGISTERED SECURITIES ASSOCIATIONS

Pub. L. 94-29, §31(b), June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 170, provided that: "If it appears to the Commission at any time within one year of the effective date of any amendment made by this Act [see Short Title of 1975 Amendment note under section 78a of this title] to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 that the organization or rules of any national securities exchange or registered securities association registered with the Commission on the date of enactment of this Act [June 4, 1975] do not comply with such Act as amended, the Commission shall so notify such exchange or association in writing, specifying the respects in which the exchange or association is not in compliance with such Act. On and after the one hundred eightieth day following the date of receipt of such notice by a national securities exchange or registered securities association, the Commission, without regard to the provisions of section 19(h) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [section 78s(h) of this title], as amended by this Act, is authorized by order, to suspend the registration of any such exchange or association or impose limitations on the activities, functions, and operations of any such exchange or association, if the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that the organization or rules of such exchange or association do not comply with such Act. Any such suspension or limitation shall continue in effect until the Commission, by order, declares that such exchange or association is in compliance with such requirements."

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

¹ See References in Text note below.

§78g. Margin requirements

(a) Rules and regulations for extension of credit; standard for initial extension; undermargined accounts

For the purpose of preventing the excessive use of credit for the purchase or carrying of securities, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall, prior to October 1, 1934, and from time to time thereafter, prescribe rules and regulations with respect to the amount of credit that may be initially extended and subsequently maintained on any security (other than an exempted security or a security futures product). For the initial extension of credit, such rules and regulations shall be based upon the following standard: An amount not greater than whichever is the higher of—

- (1) 55 per centum of the current market price of the security, or
- (2) 100 per centum of the lowest market price of the security during the preceding thirty-six calendar months, but not more than 75 per centum of the current market price.

Such rules and regulations may make appropriate provision with respect to the carrying of undermargined accounts for limited periods and under specified conditions; the withdrawal of funds or securities; the substitution or additional purchases of securities; the transfer of accounts from one lender to another; special or different margin requirements for delayed deliveries, short sales,

arbitrage transactions, and securities to which paragraph (2) of this subsection does not apply; the bases and the methods to be used in calculating loans, and margins and market prices; and similar administrative adjustments and details. For the purposes of paragraph (2) of this subsection, until July 1, 1936, the lowest price at which a security has sold on or after July 1, 1933, shall be considered as the lowest price at which such security has sold during the preceding thirty-six calendar months.

(b) Lower and higher margin requirements

Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection (a) of this section, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, may, from time to time, with respect to all or specified securities or transactions, or classes of securities, or classes of transactions, by such rules and regulations (1) prescribe such lower margin requirements for the initial extension or maintenance of credit as it deems necessary or appropriate for the accommodation of commerce and industry, having due regard to the general credit situation of the country, and (2) prescribe such higher margin requirements for the initial extension or maintenance of credit as it may deem necessary or appropriate to prevent the excessive use of credit to finance transactions in securities.

(c) Unlawful credit extension to customers

(1) Prohibition

It shall be unlawful for any member of a national securities exchange or any broker or dealer, directly or indirectly, to extend or maintain credit or arrange for the extension or maintenance of credit to or for any customer—

(A) on any security (other than an exempted security), except as provided in paragraph (2), in contravention of the rules and regulations which the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (hereafter in this section referred to as the "Board") shall prescribe under subsections (a) and (b); or

(B) without collateral or on any collateral other than securities, except in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Board may prescribe—

(i) to permit under specified conditions and for a limited period any such member, broker, or dealer to maintain a credit initially extended in conformity with the rules and regulations of the Board; and

(ii) to permit the extension or maintenance of credit in cases where the extension or maintenance of credit is not for the purpose of purchasing or carrying securities or of evading or circumventing the provisions of subparagraph (A).

(2) Margin regulations

(A) Compliance with margin rules required

It shall be unlawful for any broker, dealer, or member of a national securities exchange to, directly or indirectly, extend or maintain credit to or for, or collect margin from any customer on, any security futures product unless such activities comply with the regulations—

(i) which the Board shall prescribe pursuant to subparagraph (B); or

(ii) if the Board determines to delegate the authority to prescribe such regulations, which the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall jointly prescribe pursuant to subparagraph (B).

If the Board delegates the authority to prescribe such regulations under clause (ii) and the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission have not jointly prescribed such regulations within a reasonable period of time after the date of such delegation, the Board shall prescribe such regulations pursuant to subparagraph (B).

(B) Criteria for issuance of rules

The Board shall prescribe, or, if the authority is delegated pursuant to subparagraph (A)(ii), the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall jointly prescribe, such regulations to establish margin requirements, including the establishment of levels of margin

(initial and maintenance) for security futures products under such terms, and at such levels, as the Board deems appropriate, or as the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission jointly deem appropriate—

- (i) to preserve the financial integrity of markets trading security futures products;
- (ii) to prevent systemic risk;
- (iii) to require that—

(I) the margin requirements for a security future product be consistent with the margin requirements for comparable option contracts traded on any exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(a) of this title; and

(II) initial and maintenance margin levels for a security future product not be lower than the lowest level of margin, exclusive of premium, required for any comparable option contract traded on any exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(a) of this title, other than an option on a security future;

except that nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed to prevent a national securities exchange or national securities association from requiring higher margin levels for a security future product when it deems such action to be necessary or appropriate; and

- (iv) to ensure that the margin requirements (other than levels of margin), including the type, form, and use of collateral for security futures products, are and remain consistent with the requirements established by the Board, pursuant to subparagraphs (A) and (B) of paragraph (1).

(3) Exception

This subsection and the rules and regulations issued under this subsection shall not apply to any credit extended, maintained, or arranged by a member of a national securities exchange or a broker or dealer to or for a member of a national securities exchange or a registered broker or dealer—

- (A) a substantial portion of whose business consists of transactions with persons other than brokers or dealers; or
- (B) to finance its activities as a market maker or an underwriter;

except that the Board may impose such rules and regulations, in whole or in part, on any credit otherwise exempted by this paragraph if the Board determines that such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(d) Unlawful credit extension in violation of rules and regulations; exceptions to application of rules, etc.

(1) Prohibition

It shall be unlawful for any person not subject to subsection (c) to extend or maintain credit or to arrange for the extension or maintenance of credit for the purpose of purchasing or carrying any security, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Board shall prescribe to prevent the excessive use of credit for the purchasing or carrying of or trading in securities in circumvention of the other provisions of this section. Such rules and regulations may impose upon all loans made for the purpose of purchasing or carrying securities limitations similar to those imposed upon members, brokers, or dealers by subsection (c) and the rules and regulations thereunder.

(2) Exceptions

This subsection and the rules and regulations issued under this subsection shall not apply to any credit extended, maintained, or arranged—

- (A) by a person not in the ordinary course of business;
- (B) on an exempted security;
- (C) to or for a member of a national securities exchange or a registered broker or dealer—
 - (i) a substantial portion of whose business consists of transactions with persons other than brokers or dealers; or
 - (ii) to finance its activities as a market maker or an underwriter;

(D) by a bank on a security other than an equity security; or

(E) as the Board shall, by such rules, regulations, or orders as it may deem necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, exempt, either unconditionally or upon specified terms and conditions or for stated periods, from the operation of this subsection and the rules and regulations thereunder.

(3) Board authority

The Board may impose such rules and regulations, in whole or in part, on any credit otherwise exempted by subparagraph (C) if it determines that such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(e) Effective date of this section and rules and regulations

The provisions of this section or the rules and regulations thereunder shall not apply on or before July 1, 1937, to any loan or extension of credit made prior to June 6, 1934, or to the maintenance, renewal, or extension of any such loan or credit, except to the extent that the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System may by rules and regulations prescribe as necessary to prevent the circumvention of the provisions of this section or the rules and regulations thereunder by means of withdrawals of funds or securities, substitutions of securities, or additional purchases or by any other device.

(f) Unlawful receipt of credit; exemptions

(1) It is unlawful for any United States person, or any foreign person controlled by a United States person or acting on behalf of or in conjunction with such person, to obtain, receive, or enjoy the beneficial use of a loan or other extension of credit from any lender (without regard to whether the lender's office or place of business is in a State or the transaction occurred in whole or in part within a State) for the purpose of (A) purchasing or carrying United States securities, or (B) purchasing or carrying within the United States of any other securities, if, under this section or rules and regulations prescribed thereunder, the loan or other credit transaction is prohibited or would be prohibited if it had been made or the transaction had otherwise occurred in a lender's office or other place of business in a State.

(2) For the purposes of this subsection—

(A) The term "United States person" includes a person which is organized or exists under the laws of any State or, in the case of a natural person, a citizen or resident of the United States; a domestic estate; or a trust in which one or more of the foregoing persons has a cumulative direct or indirect beneficial interest in excess of 50 per centum of the value of the trust.

(B) The term "United States security" means a security (other than an exempted security) issued by a person incorporated under the laws of any State, or whose principal place of business is within a State.

(C) The term "foreign person controlled by a United States person" includes any noncorporate entity in which United States persons directly or indirectly have more than a 50 per centum beneficial interest, and any corporation in which one or more United States persons, directly or indirectly, own stock possessing more than 50 per centum of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock entitled to vote, or more than 50 per centum of the total value of shares of all classes of stock.

(3) The Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System may, in its discretion and with due regard for the purposes of this section, by rule or regulation exempt any class of United States persons or foreign persons controlled by a United States person from the application of this subsection.

(g) Effect of bona fide agreement for delayed delivery of mortgage related security

Subject to such rules and regulations as the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System may adopt in the public interest and for the protection of investors, no member of a national securities exchange or broker or dealer shall be deemed to have extended or maintained credit or

arranged for the extension or maintenance of credit for the purpose of purchasing a security, within the meaning of this section, by reason of a bona fide agreement for delayed delivery of a mortgage related security or a small business related security against full payment of the purchase price thereof upon such delivery within one hundred and eighty days after the purchase, or within such shorter period as the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System may prescribe by rule or regulation. (June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §7, 48 Stat. 886; Aug. 23, 1935, ch. 614, §203(a), 49 Stat. 704; Pub. L. 90-437, July 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 452; Pub. L. 91-508, title III, §301(a), Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1124; Pub. L. 98-440, title I, §102, Oct. 3, 1984, 98 Stat. 1690; Pub. L. 103-325, title II, §203, Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2199; Pub. L. 104-290, title I, §104(a), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3422; Pub. L. 105-353, title III, §301(b)(5), (6), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(b)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A-429; Pub. L. 111-203, title IX, §929, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1852.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (c)(1)(A). Pub. L. 111-203 substituted "; or" for "; and" at end.

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(b)(1)], inserted "or a security futures product" after "exempted security" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(1)(A). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(b)(2)], inserted "except as provided in paragraph (2)," after "security".

Subsec. (c)(2), (3). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(b)(3), (4)], added par. (2) and redesignated former par. (2) as (3).

1998—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 105-353, §301(b)(5), substituted "Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System" for "Federal Reserve Board".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 105-353, §301(b)(6), substituted "exceptions" for "exception" in heading.

1996—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104-290, §104(a)(1), amended heading and text of subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "It shall be unlawful for any member of a national securities exchange or any broker or dealer, directly or indirectly, to extend or maintain credit or arrange for the extension or maintenance of credit to or for any customer—

"(1) on any security (other than an exempted security), in contravention of the rules and regulations which the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall prescribe under subsections (a) and (b) of this section;

"(2) without collateral or on any collateral other than securities, except in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System may prescribe (A) to permit under specified conditions and for a limited period any such member, broker, or dealer to maintain a credit initially extended in conformity with the rules and regulations of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and (B) to permit the extension or maintenance of credit in cases where the extension or maintenance of credit is not for the purpose of purchasing or carrying securities or of evading or circumventing the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection."

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 104-290, §104(a)(2), amended heading and text of subsec. (d) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "It shall be unlawful for any person not subject to subsection (c) of this section to extend or maintain credit or to arrange for the extension or maintenance of credit for the purpose of purchasing or carrying any security, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall prescribe to prevent the excessive use of credit for the purchasing or carrying of or trading in securities in circumvention of the other provisions of this section. Such rules and regulations may impose upon all loans made for the purpose of purchasing or carrying securities limitations similar to those imposed upon members, brokers, or dealers by subsection (c) of this section and the rules and regulations thereunder. This subsection and the rules and regulations thereunder shall not apply (A) to a loan made by a person not in the ordinary course of his business, (B) to a loan on an exempted security, (C) to a loan to a dealer to aid in the financing of the distribution of securities to customers not through the medium of a national securities exchange, (D) to a loan by a bank on a security other than an equity security, or (E) to such other loans as the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall, by such rules and regulations as it may deem necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, exempt, either unconditionally or upon specified terms and conditions or for stated periods, from the operation of this subsection and the rules and regulations thereunder."

1994—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 103–325 inserted "or a small business related security" after "mortgage related security".

1984—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 98–440 added subsec. (g).

1970—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 91–508 added subsec. (f).

1968—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90–437, §1(1), struck out "registered on a national securities exchange" after "(other than an exempted security)".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 90–437, §1(2), struck out "who transacts a business in securities through the medium of any such member" after "any broker or dealer", in par. (1) struck out "registered on a national securities exchange" after "(other than an exempted security)", and in par. (2) substituted "other than securities" for "other than exempted securities and/or securities registered upon a national securities exchange".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 90–437, §1(3), struck out "registered on a national securities exchange" after "the purpose of purchasing or carrying any security", and "registered on national securities exchanges" after "the purpose of purchasing or carrying securities".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CHANGE OF NAME

Act Aug. 23, 1935, in subsec. (e), substituted "Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System" for "Federal Reserve Board".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1970 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–508 effective on first day of seventh calendar month which begins after Oct. 26, 1970, except as otherwise provided in section 401(c) of Pub. L. 91–508, see section 401(a) of Pub. L. 91–508, set out as a note under section 1951 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Pub. L. 91–508, title IV, §401(c), Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1125, provided that: "The Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System may by regulation provide that the amendment made by title III [amending this section] shall be effective on any date not earlier than the publication of the regulation in the Federal Register and not later than the first day of the thirteenth calendar month which begins after the date of enactment [Oct. 26, 1970]."

VALIDITY OF RULES AND REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 91–508, title III, §301(b), Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1125, provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) of this section [amending this section] does not affect the continuing validity of any rule or regulation under section 7 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [this section] in effect prior to the effective date of the amendment."

§78h. Restrictions on borrowing and lending by members, brokers, and dealers

It shall be unlawful for any registered broker or dealer, member of a national securities exchange, or broker or dealer who transacts a business in securities through the medium of any member of a national securities exchange, directly or indirectly—

(a) In contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission shall prescribe for the protection of investors to hypothecate or arrange for the hypothecation of any securities carried for the account of any customer under circumstances (1) that will permit the commingling of his securities without his written consent with the securities of any other customer, (2) that will permit such securities to be commingled with the securities of any person other than a bona fide customer, or (3) that will permit such securities to be hypothecated, or subjected to any lien or claim of the pledgee, for a sum in excess of the aggregate indebtedness of such customers in respect of such securities.

(b) To lend or arrange for the lending of any securities carried for the account of any customer without the written consent of such customer or in contravention of such rules and regulations as the

Commission shall prescribe for the protection of investors.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §8, 48 Stat. 888; Aug. 23, 1935, ch. 614, §203(a), 49 Stat. 704; Pub. L. 94-29, §5, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 109; Pub. L. 98-440, title I, §103, Oct. 3, 1984, 98 Stat. 1690; Pub. L. 103-325, title II, §204, Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2199; Pub. L. 104-290, title I, §104(b), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3423.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1996—Pub. L. 104-290 redesignated subsecs. (b) and (c) as (a) and (b), respectively, and struck out former subsec. (a) which related to borrowing in ordinary course of business as broker or dealer on any security, except exempted security, registered on national securities exchange.

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-325 inserted "or a small business related security" after "mortgage related security" in last sentence.

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98-440 inserted provision that no person shall be deemed to have borrowed within the ordinary course of business, within the meaning of this subsection, by reason of a bona fide agreement for delayed delivery of a mortgage related security under certain conditions.

1975—Pub. L. 94-29, §5(1), substituted "any registered broker or dealer, member of a national securities exchange, or broker or dealer who transacts a business in securities through the medium of any member of a national securities exchange" for "any member of a national securities exchange, or any broker or dealer who transacts a business in securities through the medium of any such member" in provisions preceding subsec. (a).

Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 94-29, §5(2), redesignated subsecs. (c) and (d) as (b) and (c), respectively, and in subsec. (c) as so redesignated inserted "or in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commissioner shall prescribe for the protection of investors" after "written consent of such customer". Former subsec. (b), which covered the maximum allowable aggregate indebtedness of brokers, was struck out.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

CHANGE OF NAME

Act Aug. 23, 1935, substituted "Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System" for "Federal Reserve Board".

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94-29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94-29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

§78i. Manipulation of security prices

(a) Transactions relating to purchase or sale of security

It shall be unlawful for any person, directly or indirectly, by the use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, or of any facility of any national securities exchange, or for any member of a national securities exchange—

(1) For the purpose of creating a false or misleading appearance of active trading in any security other than a government security, or a false or misleading appearance with respect to the market for any such security, (A) to effect any transaction in such security which involves no change in the beneficial ownership thereof, or (B) to enter an order or orders for the purchase of such

security with the knowledge that an order or orders of substantially the same size, at substantially the same time, and at substantially the same price, for the sale of any such security, has been or will be entered by or for the same or different parties, or (C) to enter any order or orders for the sale of any such security with the knowledge that an order or orders of substantially the same size, at substantially the same time, and at substantially the same price, for the purchase of such security, has been or will be entered by or for the same or different parties.

(2) To effect, alone or with 1 or more other persons, a series of transactions in any security registered on a national securities exchange, any security not so registered, or in connection with any security-based swap or security-based swap agreement with respect to such security creating actual or apparent active trading in such security, or raising or depressing the price of such security, for the purpose of inducing the purchase or sale of such security by others.

(3) If a dealer, broker, security-based swap dealer, major security-based swap participant, or other person selling or offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security, a security-based swap, or a security-based swap agreement with respect to such security, to induce the purchase or sale of any security registered on a national securities exchange, any security not so registered, any security-based swap, or any security-based swap agreement with respect to such security by the circulation or dissemination in the ordinary course of business of information to the effect that the price of any such security will or is likely to rise or fall because of market operations of any 1 or more persons conducted for the purpose of raising or depressing the price of such security.

(4) If a dealer, broker, security-based swap dealer, major security-based swap participant, or other person selling or offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security, a security-based swap, or security-based swap agreement with respect to such security, to make, regarding any security registered on a national securities exchange, any security not so registered, any security-based swap, or any security-based swap agreement with respect to such security, for the purpose of inducing the purchase or sale of such security, such security-based swap, or such security-based swap agreement any statement which was at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made, false or misleading with respect to any material fact, and which that person knew or had reasonable ground to believe was so false or misleading.

(5) For a consideration, received directly or indirectly from a broker, dealer, security-based swap dealer, major security-based swap participant, or other person selling or offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security, a security-based swap, or security-based swap agreement with respect to such security, to induce the purchase of any security registered on a national securities exchange, any security not so registered, any security-based swap, or any security-based swap agreement with respect to such security by the circulation or dissemination of information to the effect that the price of any such security will or is likely to rise or fall because of the market operations of any 1 or more persons conducted for the purpose of raising or depressing the price of such security.

(6) To effect either alone or with one or more other persons any series of transactions for the purchase and/or sale of any security other than a government security for the purpose of pegging, fixing, or stabilizing the price of such security in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(b) Transactions relating to puts, calls, straddles, options, futures, or security-based swaps

It shall be unlawful for any person to effect, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors—

(1) any transaction in connection with any security whereby any party to such transaction acquires—

(A) any put, call, straddle, or other option or privilege of buying the security from or selling the security to another without being bound to do so;

(B) any security futures product on the security; or

(C) any security-based swap involving the security or the issuer of the security;

(2) any transaction in connection with any security with relation to which such person has, directly or indirectly, any interest in any—

- (A) such put, call, straddle, option, or privilege;
- (B) such security futures product; or
- (C) such security-based swap; or

(3) any transaction in any security for the account of any person who such person has reason to believe has, and who actually has, directly or indirectly, any interest in any—

- (A) such put, call, straddle, option, or privilege;
- (B) such security futures product with relation to such security; or
- (C) any security-based swap involving such security or the issuer of such security.

(c) Endorsement or guarantee of puts, calls, straddles, or options

It shall be unlawful for any broker, dealer, or member of a national securities exchange directly or indirectly to endorse or guarantee the performance of any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege in relation to any security other than a government security, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(d) Transactions relating to short sales of securities

It shall be unlawful for any person, directly or indirectly, by the use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, or of any facility of any national securities exchange, or for any member of a national securities exchange to effect, alone or with one or more other persons, a manipulative short sale of any security. The Commission shall issue such other rules as are necessary or appropriate to ensure that the appropriate enforcement options and remedies are available for violations of this subsection in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(e) Registered warrant, right, or convertible security not included in "put", "call", "straddle", or "option"

The terms "put", "call", "straddle", "option", or "privilege" as used in this section shall not include any registered warrant, right, or convertible security.

(f) Persons liable; suits at law or in equity

Any person who willfully participates in any act or transaction in violation of subsections (a), (b), or (c) of this section, shall be liable to any person who shall purchase or sell any security at a price which was affected by such act or transaction, and the person so injured may sue in law or in equity in any court of competent jurisdiction to recover the damages sustained as a result of any such act or transaction. In any such suit the court may, in its discretion, require an undertaking for the payment of the costs of such suit, and assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against either party litigant. Every person who becomes liable to make any payment under this subsection may recover contribution as in cases of contract from any person who, if joined in the original suit, would have been liable to make the same payment. No action shall be maintained to enforce any liability created under this section, unless brought within one year after the discovery of the facts constituting the violation and within three years after such violation.

(g) Subsection (a) not applicable to exempted securities

The provisions of subsection (a) shall not apply to an exempted security.

(h) Foreign currencies and security futures products

(1) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission shall have the authority to regulate the trading of any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security, certificate of deposit, or group or index of securities (including any interest therein or based on the value thereof), or any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege entered into on a national securities exchange relating to foreign currency (but not, with respect to any of the foregoing, an option on a contract for future delivery other than a security futures product).

(2) Notwithstanding the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.], the Commission shall have the authority to regulate the trading of any security futures product to the extent provided in the securities laws.

(i) Limitations on practices that affect market volatility

It shall be unlawful for any person, by the use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or of any facility of any national securities exchange, to use or employ any act or practice in connection with the purchase or sale of any equity security in contravention of such rules or regulations as the Commission may adopt, consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets—

(1) to prescribe means reasonably designed to prevent manipulation of price levels of the equity securities market or a substantial segment thereof; and

(2) to prohibit or constrain, during periods of extraordinary market volatility, any trading practice in connection with the purchase or sale of equity securities that the Commission determines (A) has previously contributed significantly to extraordinary levels of volatility that have threatened the maintenance of fair and orderly markets; and (B) is reasonably certain to engender such levels of volatility if not prohibited or constrained.

In adopting rules under paragraph (2), the Commission shall, consistent with the purposes of this subsection, minimize the impact on the normal operations of the market and a natural person's freedom to buy or sell any equity security.

(j) ¹ Limitation on Commission authority

The authority of the Commission under this section with respect to security-based swap agreements shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of section 78c–1(b) of this title.

(j) ¹ Regulations relating to security-based swaps

It shall be unlawful for any person, directly or indirectly, by the use of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or of the mails, or of any facility of any national securities exchange, to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security-based swap, in connection with which such person engages in any fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative act or practice, makes any fictitious quotation, or engages in any transaction, practice, or course of business which operates as a fraud or deceit upon any person. The Commission shall, for the purposes of this subsection, by rules and regulations define, and prescribe means reasonably designed to prevent, such transactions, acts, practices, and courses of business as are fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative, and such quotations as are fictitious.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §9, 48 Stat. 889; Pub. L. 97–303, §3, Oct. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1409; Pub. L. 101–432, §6(a), Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 975; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(1), (2), title III, §303(b), (c)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–425, 2763A–426, 2763A–453, 2763A–454; Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §§762(d)(2), 763(f), (g), title IX, §§929L(1), 929X(b), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1760, 1777, 1861, 1870.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Commodity Exchange Act, referred to in subsec. (h)(2), is act Sept. 21, 1922, ch. 369, 42 Stat. 998, which is classified generally to chapter 1 (§1 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1 of Title 7 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–203, §929L(1)(A), substituted "other than a government security" for "registered on a national securities exchange" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (a)(2) to (5). Pub. L. 111–203, §762(d)(2)(A), added pars. (2) to (5) and struck out former pars. (2) to (5) which prohibited certain actions in the purchase or sale of a security or a security-based swap agreement, such as making false or misleading statements or creating conditions to raise or depress the price

of such security.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111-203, §929L(1)(B), struck out "by use of any facility of a national securities exchange," after "effect," in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(1) to (3). Pub. L. 111-203, §763(f), added pars. (1) to (3) and struck out former pars. (1) to (3) which read as follows:

"(1) any transaction in connection with any security whereby any party to such transaction acquires (A) any put, call, straddle, or other option or privilege of buying the security from or selling the security to another without being bound to do so; or (B) any security futures product on the security; or

"(2) any transaction in connection with any security with relation to which he has, directly or indirectly, any interest in any (A) such put, call, straddle, option, or privilege; or (B) such security futures product; or

"(3) any transaction in any security for the account of any person who he has reason to believe has, and who actually has, directly or indirectly, any interest in any (A) such put, call, straddle, option, or privilege; or (B) such security futures product with relation to such security."

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111-203, §929L(1)(C), inserted "broker, dealer, or" after "unlawful for any".

Pub. L. 111-203, §929L(1)(A), substituted "other than a government security" for "registered on a national securities exchange".

Subsecs. (d) to (i). Pub. L. 111-203, §929X(b), added subsec. (d) and redesignated former subsecs. (d) to (h) as (e) to (i), respectively. Former subsec. (i), relating to limitation on Commission authority, redesignated (j).

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 111-203, §929X(b)(1), redesignated subsec. (i), relating to limitation on Commission authority, as (j).

Pub. L. 111-203, §763(g), added subsec. (j) relating to regulations relating to security-based swaps.

Pub. L. 111-203, §762(d)(2)(B), which directed amendment of subsec. (i) by striking out "(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)", was executed by making the strike out after "security-based swap agreements" in subsec. (j) relating to limitation on Commission authority, to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the redesignation of subsec. (i) as (j) by Pub. L. 111-203, §929X(b)(1). See above and Effective Date of 2010 Amendment notes below.

2000—Subsec. (a)(2) to (5). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(b)], amended pars. (2) to (5) generally. Prior to amendment, pars. (2) to (5) read as follows:

"(2) To effect, alone or with one or more other persons, a series of transactions in any security registered on a national securities exchange creating actual or apparent active trading in such security or raising or depressing the price of such security, for the purpose of inducing the purchase or sale of such security by others.

"(3) If a dealer or broker, or other person selling or offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security, to induce the purchase or sale of any security registered on a national securities exchange by the circulation or dissemination in the ordinary course of business of information to the effect that the price of any such security will or is likely to rise or fall because of market operations of any one or more persons conducted for the purpose of raising or depressing the prices of such security.

"(4) If a dealer or broker, or other person selling or offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security, to make, regarding any security registered on a national securities exchange, for the purpose of inducing the purchase or sale of such security, any statement which was at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made, false or misleading with respect to any material fact, and which he knew or had reasonable ground to believe was so false or misleading.

"(5) For a consideration, received directly or indirectly from a dealer or broker, or other person selling or offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security, to induce the purchase or sale of any security registered on a national securities exchange by the circulation or dissemination of information to the effect that the price of any such security will or is likely to rise or fall because of the market operations of any one or more persons conducted for the purpose of raising or depressing the price of such security."

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(1)(A)], inserted "(A)" after "acquires" and substituted "; or (B) any security futures product on the security; or" for "; or".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(1)(B)], inserted "(A)" after "interest in any" and substituted "; or (B) such security futures product; or" for "; or".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(1)(C)], inserted "(A)" after "interest in any" and "; or (B) such security futures product" after "privilege".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(2)], designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted "other than a security futures product" after "future delivery", and added par. (2).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(c)], added subsec. (i).

1990—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 101-432 added subsec. (h).

1982—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 97–303, §3(1), substituted "The provisions of subsection (a) shall not apply" for "The provisions of this section shall not apply".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 97–303, §3(2), added subsec. (g).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 929L(1) and 929X(b) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by sections 762(d)(2) and 763(f), (g) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

¹ So in original. Two subsecs. (j) have been enacted.

§78j. Manipulative and deceptive devices

It shall be unlawful for any person, directly or indirectly, by the use of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or of the mails, or of any facility of any national securities exchange—

(a)(1) To effect a short sale, or to use or employ any stop-loss order in connection with the purchase or sale, of any security other than a government security, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(2) Paragraph (1) of this subsection shall not apply to security futures products.

(b) To use or employ, in connection with the purchase or sale of any security registered on a national securities exchange or any security not so registered, or any securities-based swap agreement ¹ any manipulative or deceptive device or contrivance in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(c)(1) To effect, accept, or facilitate a transaction involving the loan or borrowing of securities in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(2) Nothing in paragraph (1) may be construed to limit the authority of the appropriate Federal banking agency (as defined in section 1813(q) of title 12), the National Credit Union Administration, or any other Federal department or agency having a responsibility under Federal law to prescribe rules or regulations restricting transactions involving the loan or borrowing of securities in order to protect the safety and soundness of a financial institution or to protect the financial system from systemic risk.

Rules promulgated under subsection (b) that prohibit fraud, manipulation, or insider trading (but not rules imposing or specifying reporting or recordkeeping requirements, procedures, or standards as prophylactic measures against fraud, manipulation, or insider trading), and judicial precedents decided under subsection (b) and rules promulgated thereunder that prohibit fraud, manipulation, or

insider trading, shall apply to security-based swap agreements to the same extent as they apply to securities. Judicial precedents decided under section 77q(a) of this title and sections 78i, 78o, 78p, 78t, and 78u-1 of this title, and judicial precedents decided under applicable rules promulgated under such sections, shall apply to security-based swap agreements to the same extent as they apply to securities.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §10, 48 Stat. 891; Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(g), title III, §303(d)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A-432, 2763A-454; Pub. L. 111-203, title VII, §762(d)(3), title IX, §§929L(2), 984(a), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1761, 1861, 1932.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

2010—Pub. L. 111-203, §762(d)(3)(B), which directed amendment of the matter following subsection (b) "by striking '(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act), in each place that such terms appear' ", was executed by striking out "(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)" after "security-based swap agreements" in two places in concluding provisions following subsec. (c) to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111-203, §929L(2), substituted "other than a government security" for "registered on a national securities exchange".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111-203, §762(d)(3)(A), struck out "(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)," after "securities-based swap agreement".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111-203, §984(a), which directed amendment of this section by adding subsec. (c) at the end, was executed by adding subsec. (c) after subsec. (b) to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

2000—Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(d)(2)], inserted concluding provisions at end.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(g)], designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(d)(1)], inserted "or any securities-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)," before "any manipulative or deceptive device".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 929L(2) and 984(a) of Pub. L. 111-203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111-203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 762(d)(3) of Pub. L. 111-203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761-774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111-203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111-203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

REGULATIONS

Pub. L. 111-203, title IX, §984(b), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1933, provided that: "Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of this Act [July 21, 2010], the Commission shall promulgate rules that are designed to increase the transparency of information available to brokers, dealers, and investors, with respect to the loan or borrowing of securities."

[For definitions of terms used in section 984(b) of Pub. L. 111-203, set out above, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.]

PROHIBITION OF INSIDER TRADING

Pub. L. 112-105, §4(a), Apr. 4, 2012, 126 Stat. 292, provided that: "Members of Congress and employees of Congress are not exempt from the insider trading prohibitions arising under the securities laws, including section 10(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78j(b)] and Rule 10b-5 thereunder."

[For definitions of "Member of Congress" and "employee of Congress", see section 2 of Pub. L. 112-105, set out as a Definitions note under section 13101 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.]

APPLICATION OF INSIDER TRADING LAWS

Pub. L. 112–105, §9(b)(1), Apr. 4, 2012, 126 Stat. 297, provided that: "Executive branch employees, judicial officers, and judicial employees are not exempt from the insider trading prohibitions arising under the securities laws, including section 10(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78j(b)] and Rule 10b–5 thereunder."

[For definitions of "executive branch employees", "judicial officers", and "judicial employees", see section 2 of Pub. L. 112–105, set out as a Definitions note under section 13101 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.]

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

¹ So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.

§78j–1. Audit requirements

(a) In general

Each audit required pursuant to this chapter of the financial statements of an issuer by a registered public accounting firm shall include, in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, as may be modified or supplemented from time to time by the Commission—

- (1) procedures designed to provide reasonable assurance of detecting illegal acts that would have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts;
- (2) procedures designed to identify related party transactions that are material to the financial statements or otherwise require disclosure therein; and
- (3) an evaluation of whether there is substantial doubt about the ability of the issuer to continue as a going concern during the ensuing fiscal year.

(b) Required response to audit discoveries

(1) Investigation and report to management

If, in the course of conducting an audit pursuant to this chapter to which subsection (a) applies, the registered public accounting firm detects or otherwise becomes aware of information indicating that an illegal act (whether or not perceived to have a material effect on the financial statements of the issuer) has or may have occurred, the firm shall, in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, as may be modified or supplemented from time to time by the Commission—

- (A)(i) determine whether it is likely that an illegal act has occurred; and
- (ii) if so, determine and consider the possible effect of the illegal act on the financial statements of the issuer, including any contingent monetary effects, such as fines, penalties, and damages; and
- (B) as soon as practicable, inform the appropriate level of the management of the issuer and assure that the audit committee of the issuer, or the board of directors of the issuer in the absence of such a committee, is adequately informed with respect to illegal acts that have been detected or have otherwise come to the attention of such firm in the course of the audit, unless the illegal act is clearly inconsequential.

(2) Response to failure to take remedial action

If, after determining that the audit committee of the board of directors of the issuer, or the board of directors of the issuer in the absence of an audit committee, is adequately informed with respect to illegal acts that have been detected or have otherwise come to the attention of the firm in the course of the audit of such firm, the registered public accounting firm concludes that—

- (A) the illegal act has a material effect on the financial statements of the issuer;
- (B) the senior management has not taken, and the board of directors has not caused senior management to take, timely and appropriate remedial actions with respect to the illegal act; and
- (C) the failure to take remedial action is reasonably expected to warrant departure from a standard report of the auditor, when made, or warrant resignation from the audit engagement;

the registered public accounting firm shall, as soon as practicable, directly report its conclusions to the board of directors.

(3) Notice to Commission; response to failure to notify

An issuer whose board of directors receives a report under paragraph (2) shall inform the Commission by notice not later than 1 business day after the receipt of such report and shall furnish the registered public accounting firm making such report with a copy of the notice furnished to the Commission. If the registered public accounting firm fails to receive a copy of the notice before the expiration of the required 1-business-day period, the registered public accounting firm shall—

- (A) resign from the engagement; or
- (B) furnish to the Commission a copy of its report (or the documentation of any oral report given) not later than 1 business day following such failure to receive notice.

(4) Report after resignation

If a registered public accounting firm resigns from an engagement under paragraph (3)(A), the firm shall, not later than 1 business day following the failure by the issuer to notify the Commission under paragraph (3), furnish to the Commission a copy of the report of the firm (or the documentation of any oral report given).

(c) Auditor liability limitation

No registered public accounting firm shall be liable in a private action for any finding, conclusion, or statement expressed in a report made pursuant to paragraph (3) or (4) of subsection (b), including any rule promulgated pursuant thereto.

(d) Civil penalties in cease-and-desist proceedings

If the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing in a proceeding instituted pursuant to section 78u-3 of this title, that a registered public accounting firm has willfully violated paragraph (3) or (4) of subsection (b), the Commission may, in addition to entering an order under section 78u-3 of this title, impose a civil penalty against the registered public accounting firm and any other person that the Commission finds was a cause of such violation. The determination to impose a civil penalty and the amount of the penalty shall be governed by the standards set forth in section 78u-2 of this title.

(e) Preservation of existing authority

Except as provided in subsection (d), nothing in this section shall be held to limit or otherwise affect the authority of the Commission under this chapter.

(f) Definitions

As used in this section, the term "illegal act" means an act or omission that violates any law, or any rule or regulation having the force of law. As used in this section, the term "issuer" means an issuer (as defined in section 78c of this title), the securities of which are registered under section 78l of this title, or that is required to file reports pursuant to section 78o(d) of this title, or that files or has filed a registration statement that has not yet become effective under the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), and that it has not withdrawn.

(g) Prohibited activities

Except as provided in subsection (h), it shall be unlawful for a registered public accounting firm (and any associated person of that firm, to the extent determined appropriate by the Commission) that performs for any issuer any audit required by this chapter or the rules of the Commission under

this chapter or, beginning 180 days after the date of commencement of the operations of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board established under section 7211 of this title (in this section referred to as the "Board"), the rules of the Board, to provide to that issuer, contemporaneously with the audit, any non-audit service, including—

- (1) bookkeeping or other services related to the accounting records or financial statements of the audit client;
- (2) financial information systems design and implementation;
- (3) appraisal or valuation services, fairness opinions, or contribution-in-kind reports;
- (4) actuarial services;
- (5) internal audit outsourcing services;
- (6) management functions or human resources;
- (7) broker or dealer, investment adviser, or investment banking services;
- (8) legal services and expert services unrelated to the audit; and
- (9) any other service that the Board determines, by regulation, is impermissible.

(h) Preapproval required for non-audit services

A registered public accounting firm may engage in any non-audit service, including tax services, that is not described in any of paragraphs (1) through (9) of subsection (g) for an audit client, only if the activity is approved in advance by the audit committee of the issuer, in accordance with subsection (i).

(i) Preapproval requirements

(1) In general

(A) Audit committee action

All auditing services (which may entail providing comfort letters in connection with securities underwritings or statutory audits required for insurance companies for purposes of State law) and non-audit services, other than as provided in subparagraph (B), provided to an issuer by the auditor of the issuer shall be preapproved by the audit committee of the issuer.

(B) De minimis exception

The preapproval requirement under subparagraph (A) is waived with respect to the provision of non-audit services for an issuer, if—

- (i) the aggregate amount of all such non-audit services provided to the issuer constitutes not more than 5 percent of the total amount of revenues paid by the issuer to its auditor during the fiscal year in which the non-audit services are provided;
- (ii) such services were not recognized by the issuer at the time of the engagement to be non-audit services; and
- (iii) such services are promptly brought to the attention of the audit committee of the issuer and approved prior to the completion of the audit by the audit committee or by 1 or more members of the audit committee who are members of the board of directors to whom authority to grant such approvals has been delegated by the audit committee.

(2) Disclosure to investors

Approval by an audit committee of an issuer under this subsection of a non-audit service to be performed by the auditor of the issuer shall be disclosed to investors in periodic reports required by section 78m(a) of this title.

(3) Delegation authority

The audit committee of an issuer may delegate to 1 or more designated members of the audit committee who are independent directors of the board of directors, the authority to grant preapprovals required by this subsection. The decisions of any member to whom authority is delegated under this paragraph to preapprove an activity under this subsection shall be presented to the full audit committee at each of its scheduled meetings.

(4) Approval of audit services for other purposes

In carrying out its duties under subsection (m)(2), if the audit committee of an issuer approves an audit service within the scope of the engagement of the auditor, such audit service shall be deemed to have been preapproved for purposes of this subsection.

(j) Audit partner rotation

It shall be unlawful for a registered public accounting firm to provide audit services to an issuer if the lead (or coordinating) audit partner (having primary responsibility for the audit), or the audit partner responsible for reviewing the audit, has performed audit services for that issuer in each of the 5 previous fiscal years of that issuer.

(k) Reports to audit committees

Each registered public accounting firm that performs for any issuer any audit required by this chapter shall timely report to the audit committee of the issuer—

- (1) all critical accounting policies and practices to be used;
- (2) all alternative treatments of financial information within generally accepted accounting principles that have been discussed with management officials of the issuer, ramifications of the use of such alternative disclosures and treatments, and the treatment preferred by the registered public accounting firm; and
- (3) other material written communications between the registered public accounting firm and the management of the issuer, such as any management letter or schedule of unadjusted differences.

(l) Conflicts of interest

It shall be unlawful for a registered public accounting firm to perform for an issuer any audit service required by this chapter, if a chief executive officer, controller, chief financial officer, chief accounting officer, or any person serving in an equivalent position for the issuer, was employed by that registered independent public accounting firm and participated in any capacity in the audit of that issuer during the 1-year period preceding the date of the initiation of the audit.

(m) Standards relating to audit committees

(1) Commission rules

(A) In general

Effective not later than 270 days after July 30, 2002, the Commission shall, by rule, direct the national securities exchanges and national securities associations to prohibit the listing of any security of an issuer that is not in compliance with the requirements of any portion of paragraphs (2) through (6).

(B) Opportunity to cure defects

The rules of the Commission under subparagraph (A) shall provide for appropriate procedures for an issuer to have an opportunity to cure any defects that would be the basis for a prohibition under subparagraph (A), before the imposition of such prohibition.

(2) Responsibilities relating to registered public accounting firms

The audit committee of each issuer, in its capacity as a committee of the board of directors, shall be directly responsible for the appointment, compensation, and oversight of the work of any registered public accounting firm employed by that issuer (including resolution of disagreements between management and the auditor regarding financial reporting) for the purpose of preparing or issuing an audit report or related work, and each such registered public accounting firm shall report directly to the audit committee.

(3) Independence

(A) In general

Each member of the audit committee of the issuer shall be a member of the board of directors of the issuer, and shall otherwise be independent.

(B) Criteria

In order to be considered to be independent for purposes of this paragraph, a member of an audit committee of an issuer may not, other than in his or her capacity as a member of the audit committee, the board of directors, or any other board committee—

- (i) accept any consulting, advisory, or other compensatory fee from the issuer; or
- (ii) be an affiliated person of the issuer or any subsidiary thereof.

(C) Exemption authority

The Commission may exempt from the requirements of subparagraph (B) a particular relationship with respect to audit committee members, as the Commission determines appropriate in light of the circumstances.

(4) Complaints

Each audit committee shall establish procedures for—

(A) the receipt, retention, and treatment of complaints received by the issuer regarding accounting, internal accounting controls, or auditing matters; and

(B) the confidential, anonymous submission by employees of the issuer of concerns regarding questionable accounting or auditing matters.

(5) Authority to engage advisers

Each audit committee shall have the authority to engage independent counsel and other advisers, as it determines necessary to carry out its duties.

(6) Funding

Each issuer shall provide for appropriate funding, as determined by the audit committee, in its capacity as a committee of the board of directors, for payment of compensation—

(A) to the registered public accounting firm employed by the issuer for the purpose of rendering or issuing an audit report; and

(B) to any advisers employed by the audit committee under paragraph (5).

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §10A, as added Pub. L. 104–67, title III, §301(a), Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 762; amended Pub. L. 107–204, title II, §§201(a), 202–204, 205(b), (d), 206, title III, §301, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 771–775; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §985(b)(3), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1933.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b)(1), (e), (g), (k), and (l), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (f), is title I of act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2010—Subsec. (i)(1)(B). Pub. L. 111–203 substituted "minimis" for "minus" in heading and "the non-audit" for "the nonaudit" in cl. (i).

2002—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 107–204, §205(b)(1), substituted "a registered public accounting firm" for "an independent public accountant" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 107–204, §205(b)(2), (4)(A), in introductory provisions, substituted "the registered public accounting firm" for "the independent public accountant" and "the firm" for "the accountant".

Subsec. (b)(1)(B). Pub. L. 107–204, §205(b)(4)(B), substituted "such firm" for "such accountant".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 107–204, §205(b)(2), (4)(A), (B), in introductory provisions, substituted "the firm" for "the accountant", "such firm" for "such accountant", and "the registered public accounting firm" for "the independent public accountant" and, in concluding provisions, substituted "the registered public accounting firm" for "the independent public accountant".

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 107–204, §205(b)(2), substituted "the registered public accounting firm" for "the independent public accountant" wherever appearing in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 107–204, §205(b)(1), (4)(A), (C), substituted "a registered public accounting firm" for "an independent public accountant", "the firm" for "the accountant", and "the report of the firm" for "the accountant's report".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 107–204, §205(b)(3), substituted "No registered public accounting firm" for "No independent public accountant".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 107–204, §205(b)(1), (2), substituted "a registered public accounting firm" for "an independent public accountant" and "the registered public accounting firm" for "the independent public accountant".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 107–204, §205(d), substituted "Definitions" for "Definition" in heading and inserted at end "As used in this section, the term 'issuer' means an issuer (as defined in section 78c of this title), the securities of which are registered under section 78l of this title, or that is required to file reports pursuant to section 78o(d) of this title, or that files or has filed a registration statement that has not yet become effective under the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), and that it has not withdrawn."

Subsecs. (g), (h). Pub. L. 107–204, §201(a), added subsecs. (g) and (h).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 107–204, §202, added subsec. (i).

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 107–204, §203, added subsec. (j).

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 107–204, §204, added subsec. (k).

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 107–204, §206, added subsec. (l).

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 107–204, §301, added subsec. (m).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 104–67, title III, §301(b), Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 764, provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [enacting this section] shall apply to each annual report—

"(1) for any period beginning on or after January 1, 1996, with respect to any registrant that is required to file selected quarterly financial data pursuant to the rules or regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission; and

"(2) for any period beginning on or after January 1, 1997, with respect to any other registrant."

CONSTRUCTION

Pub. L. 104–67, title II, §203, Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 762, provided that: "Nothing in this Act [see Short Title of 1995 Amendment note set out under section 78a of this title] or the amendments made by this Act shall be deemed to create or ratify any implied private right of action, or to prevent the Commission, by rule or regulation, from restricting or otherwise regulating private actions under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.]."

§78j–2. Position limits and position accountability for security-based swaps and large trader reporting

(a) Position limits

As a means reasonably designed to prevent fraud and manipulation, the Commission shall, by rule or regulation, as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, establish limits (including related hedge exemption provisions) on the size of positions in any security-based swap that may be held by any person. In establishing such limits, the Commission may require any person to aggregate positions in—

(1) any security-based swap and any security or loan or group of securities or loans on which such security-based swap is based, which such security-based swap references, or to which such security-based swap is related as described in paragraph (68) of section 78c(a) of this title, and any other instrument relating to such security or loan or group or index of securities or loans; or

(2) any security-based swap and—

(A) any security or group or index of securities, the price, yield, value, or volatility of which, or of which any interest therein, is the basis for a material term of such security-based swap as described in paragraph (68) of section 78c(a) of this title; and

(B) any other instrument relating to the same security or group or index of securities described under subparagraph (A).

(b) Exemptions

The Commission, by rule, regulation, or order, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any person or class of persons, any security-based swap or class of security-based swaps, or any transaction or class of transactions from any requirement the Commission may establish under this section with respect to position limits.

(c) SRO rules

(1) In general

As a means reasonably designed to prevent fraud or manipulation, the Commission, by rule, regulation, or order, as necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, may direct a self-regulatory organization—

(A) to adopt rules regarding the size of positions in any security-based swap that may be held by—

(i) any member of such self-regulatory organization; or

(ii) any person for whom a member of such self-regulatory organization effects transactions in such security-based swap; and

(B) to adopt rules reasonably designed to ensure compliance with requirements prescribed by the Commission under this subsection.

(2) Requirement to aggregate positions

In establishing the limits under paragraph (1), the self-regulatory organization may require such member or person to aggregate positions in—

(A) any security-based swap and any security or loan or group or narrow-based security index of securities or loans on which such security-based swap is based, which such security-based swap references, or to which such security-based swap is related as described in section 78c(a)(68) of this title, and any other instrument relating to such security or loan or group or narrow-based security index of securities or loans; or

(B)(i) any security-based swap; and

(ii) any security-based swap and any other instrument relating to the same security or group or narrow-based security index of securities.

(d) Large trader reporting

The Commission, by rule or regulation, may require any person that effects transactions for such person's own account or the account of others in any securities-based swap or uncleared security-based swap and any security or loan or group or narrow-based security index of securities or loans as set forth in paragraphs (1) and (2) of subsection (a) under this section to report such information as the Commission may prescribe regarding any position or positions in any security-based swap or uncleared security-based swap and any security or loan or group or narrow-based security index of securities or loans and any other instrument relating to such security or loan or group or narrow-based security index of securities or loans as set forth in paragraphs (1) and (2) of subsection (a) under this section.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §10B, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §763(h), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1778.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (c)(1), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note under section 77b of this title.

§78j–3. Compensation committees

(a) Independence of compensation committees

(1) Listing standards

The Commission shall, by rule, direct the national securities exchanges and national securities associations to prohibit the listing of any equity security of an issuer, other than an issuer that is a controlled company, limited partnership, company in bankruptcy proceedings, open-ended management investment company that is registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.], or a foreign private issuer that provides annual disclosures to shareholders of the reasons that the foreign private issuer does not have an independent compensation committee, that does not comply with the requirements of this subsection.

(2) Independence of compensation committees

The rules of the Commission under paragraph (1) shall require that each member of the compensation committee of the board of directors of an issuer be—

- (A) a member of the board of directors of the issuer; and
- (B) independent.

(3) Independence

The rules of the Commission under paragraph (1) shall require that, in determining the definition of the term "independence" for purposes of paragraph (2), the national securities exchanges and the national securities associations shall consider relevant factors, including—

- (A) the source of compensation of a member of the board of directors of an issuer, including any consulting, advisory, or other compensatory fee paid by the issuer to such member of the board of directors; and
- (B) whether a member of the board of directors of an issuer is affiliated with the issuer, a subsidiary of the issuer, or an affiliate of a subsidiary of the issuer.

(4) Exemption authority

The rules of the Commission under paragraph (1) shall permit a national securities exchange or a national securities association to exempt a particular relationship from the requirements of paragraph (2), with respect to the members of a compensation committee, as the national securities exchange or national securities association determines is appropriate, taking into consideration the size of an issuer and any other relevant factors.

(b) Independence of compensation consultants and other compensation committee advisers

(1) In general

The compensation committee of an issuer may only select a compensation consultant, legal counsel, or other adviser to the compensation committee after taking into consideration the factors identified by the Commission under paragraph (2).

(2) Rules

The Commission shall identify factors that affect the independence of a compensation consultant, legal counsel, or other adviser to a compensation committee of an issuer. Such factors shall be competitively neutral among categories of consultants, legal counsel, or other advisers and preserve the ability of compensation committees to retain the services of members of any such category, and shall include—

(A) the provision of other services to the issuer by the person that employs the compensation consultant, legal counsel, or other adviser;

(B) the amount of fees received from the issuer by the person that employs the compensation consultant, legal counsel, or other adviser, as a percentage of the total revenue of the person that employs the compensation consultant, legal counsel, or other adviser;

(C) the policies and procedures of the person that employs the compensation consultant, legal counsel, or other adviser that are designed to prevent conflicts of interest;

(D) any business or personal relationship of the compensation consultant, legal counsel, or other adviser with a member of the compensation committee; and

(E) any stock of the issuer owned by the compensation consultant, legal counsel, or other adviser.

(c) Compensation committee authority relating to compensation consultants

(1) Authority to retain compensation consultant

(A) In general

The compensation committee of an issuer, in its capacity as a committee of the board of directors, may, in its sole discretion, retain or obtain the advice of a compensation consultant.

(B) Direct responsibility of compensation committee

The compensation committee of an issuer shall be directly responsible for the appointment, compensation, and oversight of the work of a compensation consultant.

(C) Rule of construction

This paragraph may not be construed—

(i) to require the compensation committee to implement or act consistently with the advice or recommendations of the compensation consultant; or

(ii) to affect the ability or obligation of a compensation committee to exercise its own judgment in fulfillment of the duties of the compensation committee.

(2) Disclosure

In any proxy or consent solicitation material for an annual meeting of the shareholders (or a special meeting in lieu of the annual meeting) occurring on or after the date that is 1 year after July 21, 2010, each issuer shall disclose in the proxy or consent material, in accordance with regulations of the Commission, whether—

(A) the compensation committee of the issuer retained or obtained the advice of a compensation consultant; and

(B) the work of the compensation consultant has raised any conflict of interest and, if so, the nature of the conflict and how the conflict is being addressed.

(d) Authority to engage independent legal counsel and other advisers

(1) In general

The compensation committee of an issuer, in its capacity as a committee of the board of directors, may, in its sole discretion, retain and obtain the advice of independent legal counsel and other advisers.

(2) Direct responsibility of compensation committee

The compensation committee of an issuer shall be directly responsible for the appointment, compensation, and oversight of the work of independent legal counsel and other advisers.

(3) Rule of construction

This subsection may not be construed—

(A) to require a compensation committee to implement or act consistently with the advice or recommendations of independent legal counsel or other advisers under this subsection; or

(B) to affect the ability or obligation of a compensation committee to exercise its own judgment in fulfillment of the duties of the compensation committee.

(e) Compensation of compensation consultants, independent legal counsel, and other advisers

Each issuer shall provide for appropriate funding, as determined by the compensation committee in its capacity as a committee of the board of directors, for payment of reasonable compensation—

(1) to a compensation consultant; and

(2) to independent legal counsel or any other adviser to the compensation committee.

(f) Commission rules

(1) In general

Not later than 360 days after July 21, 2010, the Commission shall, by rule, direct the national securities exchanges and national securities associations to prohibit the listing of any security of an issuer that is not in compliance with the requirements of this section.

(2) Opportunity to cure defects

The rules of the Commission under paragraph (1) shall provide for appropriate procedures for an issuer to have a reasonable opportunity to cure any defects that would be the basis for the prohibition under paragraph (1), before the imposition of such prohibition.

(3) Exemption authority

(A) In general

The rules of the Commission under paragraph (1) shall permit a national securities exchange or a national securities association to exempt a category of issuers from the requirements under this section, as the national securities exchange or the national securities association determines is appropriate.

(B) Considerations

In determining appropriate exemptions under subparagraph (A), the national securities exchange or the national securities association shall take into account the potential impact of the requirements of this section on smaller reporting issuers.

(g) Controlled company exemption

(1) In general

This section shall not apply to any controlled company.

(2) Definition

For purposes of this section, the term "controlled company" means an issuer—

(A) that is listed on a national securities exchange or by a national securities association; and

(B) that holds an election for the board of directors of the issuer in which more than 50 percent of the voting power is held by an individual, a group, or another issuer.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §10C, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §952(a), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1900.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Investment Company Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is title I of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 789, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§80a–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80a–51 of this title and Tables.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

§78j–4. Recovery of erroneously awarded compensation policy

(a) Listing standards

The Commission shall, by rule, direct the national securities exchanges and national securities associations to prohibit the listing of any security of an issuer that does not comply with the requirements of this section.

(b) Recovery of funds

The rules of the Commission under subsection (a) shall require each issuer to develop and implement a policy providing—

(1) for disclosure of the policy of the issuer on incentive-based compensation that is based on financial information required to be reported under the securities laws; and

(2) that, in the event that the issuer is required to prepare an accounting restatement due to the material noncompliance of the issuer with any financial reporting requirement under the securities laws, the issuer will recover from any current or former executive officer of the issuer who received incentive-based compensation (including stock options awarded as compensation) during the 3-year period preceding the date on which the issuer is required to prepare an accounting restatement, based on the erroneous data, in ¹ excess of what would have been paid to the executive officer under the accounting restatement.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §10D, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §954, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1904.)

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

¹ *So in original. Probably should be "compensation in".*

§78k. Trading by members of exchanges, brokers, and dealers

(a) Trading for own account or account of associated person; exceptions

(1) It shall be unlawful for any member of a national securities exchange to effect any transaction on such exchange for its own account, the account of an associated person, or an account with respect to which it or an associated person thereof exercises investment discretion: *Provided, however,* That this paragraph shall not make unlawful—

(A) any transaction by a dealer acting in the capacity of market maker;

(B) any transaction for the account of an odd-lot dealer in a security in which he is so registered;

(C) any stabilizing transaction effected in compliance with rules under section 78j(b) of this title to facilitate a distribution of a security in which the member effecting such transaction is participating;

(D) any bona fide arbitrage transaction, any bona fide hedge transaction involving a long or short position in an equity security and a long or short position in a security entitling the holder to

acquire or sell such equity security, or any risk arbitrage transaction in connection with a merger, acquisition, tender offer, or similar transaction involving a recapitalization;

(E) any transaction for the account of a natural person, the estate of a natural person, or a trust created by a natural person for himself or another natural person;

(F) any transaction to offset a transaction made in error;

(G) any other transaction for a member's own account provided that (i) such member is primarily engaged in the business of underwriting and distributing securities issued by other persons, selling securities to customers, and acting as broker, or any one or more of such activities, and whose gross income normally is derived principally from such business and related activities and (ii) such transaction is effected in compliance with rules of the Commission which, as a minimum, assure that the transaction is not inconsistent with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets and yields priority, parity, and precedence in execution to orders for the account of persons who are not members or associated with members of the exchange;

(H) any transaction for an account with respect to which such member or an associated person thereof exercises investment discretion if such member—

(i) has obtained, from the person or persons authorized to transact business for the account, express authorization for such member or associated person to effect such transactions prior to engaging in the practice of effecting such transactions;

(ii) furnishes the person or persons authorized to transact business for the account with a statement at least annually disclosing the aggregate compensation received by the exchange member in effecting such transactions; and

(iii) complies with any rules the Commission has prescribed with respect to the requirements of clauses (i) and (ii); and

(I) any other transaction of a kind which the Commission, by rule, determines is consistent with the purposes of this paragraph, the protection of investors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets.

(2) The Commission, by rule, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, to maintain fair and orderly markets, or to assure equal regulation of exchange markets and markets occurring otherwise than on an exchange, may regulate or prohibit:

(A) transactions on a national securities exchange not unlawful under paragraph (1) of this subsection effected by any member thereof for its own account (unless such member is acting in the capacity of market maker or odd-lot dealer), the account of an associated person, or an account with respect to which such member or an associated person thereof exercises investment discretion;

(B) transactions otherwise than on a national securities exchange effected by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce by any member of a national securities exchange, broker, or dealer for the account of such member, broker, or dealer (unless such member, broker, or dealer is acting in the capacity of a market maker) ¹ the account of an associated person, or an account with respect to which such member, broker, or dealer or associated person thereof exercises investment discretion; and

(C) transactions on a national securities exchange effected by any broker or dealer not a member thereof for the account of such broker or dealer (unless such broker or dealer is acting in the capacity of market maker), the account of an associated person, or an account with respect to which such broker or dealer or associated person thereof exercises investment discretion.

(3) The provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection insofar as they apply to transactions on a national securities exchange effected by a member thereof who was a member on February 1, 1978 shall not become effective until February 1, 1979. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to impair or limit the authority of the Commission to regulate or prohibit such transactions prior to February 1, 1979, pursuant to paragraph (2) of this subsection.

(b) Registration of members as odd-lot dealers and specialists

When not in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, to maintain fair and orderly markets, or to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanism of a national market system, the rules of a national securities exchange may permit (1) a member to be registered as an odd-lot dealer and as such to buy and sell for his own account so far as may be reasonably necessary to carry on such odd-lot transactions, and (2) a member to be registered as a specialist. Under the rules and regulations of the Commission a specialist may be permitted to act as a broker and dealer or limited to acting as a broker or dealer. It shall be unlawful for a specialist or an official of the exchange to disclose information in regard to orders placed with such specialist which is not available to all members of the exchange, to any person other than an official of the exchange, a representative of the Commission, or a specialist who may be acting for such specialist: *Provided, however,* That the Commission, by rule, may require disclosure to all members of the exchange of all orders placed with specialists, under such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. It shall also be unlawful for a specialist permitted to act as a broker and dealer to effect on the exchange as broker any transaction except upon a market or limited price order.

(c) Exemptions from provisions of section and rules and regulations

If because of the limited volume of transactions effected on an exchange, it is in the opinion of the Commission impracticable and not necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors to apply any of the foregoing provisions of this section or the rules and regulations thereunder, the Commission shall have power, upon application of the exchange and on a showing that the rules of such exchange are otherwise adequate for the protection of investors, to exempt such exchange and its members from any such provision or rules and regulations.

(d) Prohibition on extension of credit by broker-dealer

It shall be unlawful for a member of a national securities exchange who is both a dealer and a broker, or for any person who both as a broker and a dealer transacts a business in securities through the medium of a member or otherwise, to effect through the use of any facility of a national securities exchange or of the mails or of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, or otherwise in the case of a member, (1) any transaction in connection with which, directly or indirectly, he extends or maintains or arranges for the extension or maintenance of credit to or for a customer on any security (other than an exempted security) which was a part of a new issue in the distribution of which he participated as a member of a selling syndicate or group within thirty days prior to such transaction: *Provided,* That credit shall not be deemed extended by reason of a bona fide delayed delivery of (i) any such security against full payment of the entire purchase price thereof upon such delivery within thirty-five days after such purchase or (ii) any mortgage related security or any small business related security against full payment of the entire purchase price thereof upon such delivery within one hundred and eighty days after such purchase, or within such shorter period as the Commission may prescribe by rule or regulation, or (2) any transaction with respect to any security (other than an exempted security) unless, if the transaction is with a customer, he discloses to such customer in writing at or before the completion of the transaction whether he is acting as a dealer for his own account, as a broker for such customer, or as a broker for some other person.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §11, 48 Stat. 891; Aug. 10, 1954, ch. 667, title II, §201, 68 Stat. 686; Pub. L. 94-29, §6, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 110; Pub. L. 95-283, §18(a), May 21, 1978, 92 Stat. 275; Pub. L. 98-440, title I, §104, Oct. 3, 1984, 98 Stat. 1690; Pub. L. 103-68, §1, Aug. 11, 1993, 107 Stat. 691; Pub. L. 103-325, title II, §205, Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2199.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (d)(1)(ii). Pub. L. 103-325 inserted "or any small business related security" after "mortgage related security".

1993—Subsec. (a)(1)(E). Pub. L. 103-68, §1(1), struck out "(other than an investment company)" after

"trust".

Subsec. (a)(1)(H), (I). Pub. L. 103-68, §1(2)-(4), added subpar. (H) and redesignated former subpar. (H) as (I).

1984—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 98-440 designated existing provisions of par. (1) as cl. (i) and added cl. (ii).

1978—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 95-283 substituted "February 1, 1978" for "May 1, 1975", and "February 1, 1979" for "May 1, 1978" in two places.

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-29, §6(2), prohibited stock exchange members from effecting any transaction on the exchange for its own account, the account of an associated person, or an account with respect to which the member or an associated person exercises investment discretion, exempted from that prohibition 8 types of transactions, and authorized the Commission, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to regulate or prohibit the specifically exempted transactions, certain transactions otherwise that on a national securities exchange, and transactions on a national securities exchange effected by a broker or dealer not a member thereof for the account of such broker or dealer, the account of an associated person, or an account with respect to which such broker, dealer, or associated person exercises investment discretion.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-29, §6(2), struck out requirement that specialist's dealings be limited to those transactions reasonably necessary to permit him to maintain a fair and orderly market, expanded the Commission's rulemaking authority in the area of specialist's dealings so that the Commission may define responsibilities and restrict activities of specialists in response to changing conditions in the market, expanded the standards to be followed by the Commission in exercising its rulemaking power to include the maintenance of fair and orderly markets and the removal of impediments to and the perfection of the mechanism of a national market system, and inserted specific reference to the Commission's power to limit the activity of a specialist to that of a broker or dealer.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94-29, §6(3), struck out subsec. (e) which directed the Commission to make a study, to be submitted on or before Jan. 3, 1936, of the feasibility of segregating the functions of dealer and broker.

1954—Subsec. (d). Act Aug. 10, 1954, reduced from 6 months to 30 days the prohibition period against extending credit to purchasers of a new issue by dealers.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 95-283, §18(b), May 21, 1978, 92 Stat. 275, provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) of this section [amending this section] shall be effective as of May 1, 1978."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94-29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94-29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1954 AMENDMENT

Amendment by act Aug. 10, 1954, effective 60 days after Aug. 10, 1954, see note under section 77b of this title.

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

¹ So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.

§78k-1. National market system for securities; securities information processors

(a) Congressional findings; facilitating establishment of national market system for securities; designation of qualified securities

(1) The Congress finds that—

(A) The securities markets are an important national asset which must be preserved and strengthened.

(B) New data processing and communications techniques create the opportunity for more efficient and effective market operations.

(C) It is in the public interest and appropriate for the protection of investors and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets to assure—

(i) economically efficient execution of securities transactions;

(ii) fair competition among brokers and dealers, among exchange markets, and between exchange markets and markets other than exchange markets;

(iii) the availability to brokers, dealers, and investors of information with respect to quotations for and transactions in securities;

(iv) the practicability of brokers executing investors' orders in the best market; and

(v) an opportunity, consistent with the provisions of clauses (i) and (iv) of this subparagraph, for investors' orders to be executed without the participation of a dealer.

(D) The linking of all markets for qualified securities through communication and data processing facilities will foster efficiency, enhance competition, increase the information available to brokers, dealers, and investors, facilitate the offsetting of investors' orders, and contribute to best execution of such orders.

(2) The Commission is directed, therefore, having due regard for the public interest, the protection of investors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, to use its authority under this chapter to facilitate the establishment of a national market system for securities (which may include subsystems for particular types of securities with unique trading characteristics) in accordance with the findings and to carry out the objectives set forth in paragraph (1) of this subsection. The Commission, by rule, shall designate the securities or classes of securities qualified for trading in the national market system from among securities other than exempted securities. (Securities or classes of securities so designated hereinafter ¹ in this section referred to as "qualified securities".)

(3) The Commission is authorized in furtherance of the directive in paragraph (2) of this subsection—

(A) to create one or more advisory committees pursuant to chapter 10 of title 5 (which shall be in addition to the National Market Advisory Board established pursuant to subsection (d) of this section),² and to employ one or more outside experts;

(B) by rule or order, to authorize or require self-regulatory organizations to act jointly with respect to matters as to which they share authority under this chapter in planning, developing, operating, or regulating a national market system (or a subsystem thereof) or one or more facilities thereof; and

(C) to conduct studies and make recommendations to the Congress from time to time as to the possible need for modifications of the scheme of self-regulation provided for in this chapter so as to adapt it to a national market system.

(b) Securities information processors; registration; withdrawal of registration; access to services; censure; suspension or revocation of registration

(1) Except as otherwise provided in this section, it shall be unlawful for any securities information processor unless registered in accordance with this subsection, directly or indirectly, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to perform the functions of a securities information processor. The Commission, by rule or order, upon its own motion or upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any securities information processor or class of securities information processors or security or class of securities from any provision of this section or the rules or regulations thereunder, if the Commission finds that such exemption is consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this section, including the maintenance of fair and orderly markets in securities and the removal of impediments

to and perfection of the mechanism of a national market system: *Provided, however,* That a securities information processor not acting as the exclusive processor of any information with respect to quotations for or transactions in securities is exempt from the requirement to register in accordance with this subsection unless the Commission, by rule or order, finds that the registration of such securities information processor is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or for the achievement of the purposes of this section.

(2) A securities information processor may be registered by filing with the Commission an application for registration in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe containing the address of its principal office, or offices, the names of the securities and markets for which it is then acting and for which it proposes to act as a securities information processor, and such other information and documents as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe with regard to performance capability, standards and procedures for the collection, processing, distribution, and publication of information with respect to quotations for and transactions in securities, personnel qualifications, financial condition, and such other matters as the Commission determines to be germane to the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder, or necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section.

(3) The Commission shall, upon the filing of an application for registration pursuant to paragraph (2) of this subsection, publish notice of the filing and afford interested persons an opportunity to submit written data, views, and arguments concerning such application. Within ninety days of the date of the publication of such notice (or within such longer period as to which the applicant consents) the Commission shall—

(A) by order grant such registration, or

(B) institute proceedings to determine whether registration should be denied. Such proceedings shall include notice of the grounds for denial under consideration and opportunity for hearing and shall be concluded within one hundred eighty days of the date of publication of notice of the filing of the application for registration. At the conclusion of such proceedings the Commission, by order, shall grant or deny such registration. The Commission may extend the time for the conclusion of such proceedings for up to sixty days if it finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer periods as to which the applicant consents.

The Commission shall grant the registration of a securities information processor if the Commission finds that such securities information processor is so organized, and has the capacity, to be able to assure the prompt, accurate, and reliable performance of its functions as a securities information processor, comply with the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder, carry out its functions in a manner consistent with the purposes of this section, and, insofar as it is acting as an exclusive processor, operate fairly and efficiently. The Commission shall deny the registration of a securities information processor if the Commission does not make any such finding.

(4) A registered securities information processor may, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, withdraw from registration by filing a written notice of withdrawal with the Commission. If the Commission finds that any registered securities information processor is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business in the capacity specified in its application for registration, the Commission, by order, shall cancel the registration.

(5)(A) If any registered securities information processor prohibits or limits any person in respect of access to services offered, directly or indirectly, by such securities information processor, the registered securities information processor shall promptly file notice thereof with the Commission. The notice shall be in such form and contain such information as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Any prohibition or limitation on access to services with respect to which a registered securities information processor is required by this paragraph to file notice shall be subject to review by the Commission on its own motion, or upon application by any person aggrieved thereby filed within thirty days after such notice has been filed with the Commission and received by such aggrieved

person, or within such longer period as the Commission may determine. Application to the Commission for review, or the institution of review by the Commission on its own motion, shall not operate as a stay of such prohibition or limitation, unless the Commission otherwise orders, summarily or after notice and opportunity for hearing on the question of a stay (which hearing may consist solely of the submission of affidavits or presentation of oral arguments). The Commission shall establish for appropriate cases an expedited procedure for consideration and determination of the question of a stay.

(B) In any proceeding to review the prohibition or limitation of any person in respect of access to services offered by a registered securities information processor, if the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such prohibition or limitation is consistent with the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder and that such person has not been discriminated against unfairly, the Commission, by order, shall dismiss the proceeding. If the Commission does not make any such finding or if it finds that such prohibition or limitation imposes any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, the Commission, by order, shall set aside the prohibition or limitation and require the registered securities information processor to permit such person access to services offered by the registered securities information processor.

(6) The Commission, by order, may censure or place limitations upon the activities, functions, or operations of any registered securities information processor or suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or revoke the registration of any such processor, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or revocation is in the public interest, necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors or to assure the prompt, accurate, or reliable performance of the functions of such securities information processor, and that such securities information processor has violated or is unable to comply with any provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder.

(c) Rules and regulations covering use of mails or other means or instrumentalities of interstate commerce; reports of purchase or sale of qualified securities; limiting registered securities transactions to national securities exchanges

(1) No self-regulatory organization, member thereof, securities information processor, broker, or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to collect, process, distribute, publish, or prepare for distribution or publication any information with respect to quotations for or transactions in any security other than an exempted security, to assist, participate in, or coordinate the distribution or publication of such information, or to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any such security in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission shall prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter to—

(A) prevent the use, distribution, or publication of fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative information with respect to quotations for and transactions in such securities;

(B) assure the prompt, accurate, reliable, and fair collection, processing, distribution, and publication of information with respect to quotations for and transactions in such securities and the fairness and usefulness of the form and content of such information;

(C) assure that all securities information processors may, for purposes of distribution and publication, obtain on fair and reasonable terms such information with respect to quotations for and transactions in such securities as is collected, processed, or prepared for distribution or publication by any exclusive processor of such information acting in such capacity;

(D) assure that all exchange members, brokers, dealers, securities information processors, and, subject to such limitations as the Commission, by rule, may impose as necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors or maintenance of fair and orderly markets, all other persons may obtain on terms which are not unreasonably discriminatory such information with respect to quotations for and transactions in such securities as is published or distributed by any self-regulatory organization or securities information processor;

(E) assure that all exchange members, brokers, and dealers transmit and direct orders for the purchase or sale of qualified securities in a manner consistent with the establishment and operation

of a national market system; and

(F) assure equal regulation of all markets for qualified securities and all exchange members, brokers, and dealers effecting transactions in such securities.

(2) The Commission, by rule, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, may require any person who has effected the purchase or sale of any qualified security by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to report such purchase or sale to a registered securities information processor, national securities exchange, or registered securities association and require such processor, exchange, or association to make appropriate distribution and publication of information with respect to such purchase or sale.

(3)(A) The Commission, by rule, is authorized to prohibit brokers and dealers from effecting transactions in securities registered pursuant to section 78l(b) of this title otherwise than on a national securities exchange, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that—

(i) as a result of transactions in such securities effected otherwise than on a national securities exchange the fairness or orderliness of the markets for such securities has been affected in a manner contrary to the public interest or the protection of investors;

(ii) no rule of any national securities exchange unreasonably impairs the ability of any dealer to solicit or effect transactions in such securities for his own account or unreasonably restricts competition among dealers in such securities or between dealers acting in the capacity of market makers who are specialists in such securities and such dealers who are not specialists in such securities, and

(iii) the maintenance or restoration of fair and orderly markets in such securities may not be assured through other lawful means under this chapter.

The Commission may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any security or transaction or any class of securities or transactions from any such prohibition if the Commission deems such exemption consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets.

(B) For the purposes of subparagraph (A) of this paragraph, the ability of a dealer to solicit or effect transactions in securities for his own account shall not be deemed to be unreasonably impaired by any rule of an exchange fairly and reasonably prescribing the sequence in which orders brought to the exchange must be executed or which has been adopted to effect compliance with a rule of the Commission promulgated under this chapter.

(4) The Commission is directed to review any and all rules of national securities exchanges which limit or condition the ability of members to effect transactions in securities otherwise than on such exchanges.

(5) No national securities exchange or registered securities association may limit or condition the participation of any member in any registered clearing agency.

(6) TICK SIZE.—

(A) STUDY AND REPORT.—The Commission shall conduct a study examining the transition to trading and quoting securities in one penny increments, also known as decimalization. The study shall examine the impact that decimalization has had on the number of initial public offerings since its implementation relative to the period before its implementation. The study shall also examine the impact that this change has had on liquidity for small and middle capitalization company securities and whether there is sufficient economic incentive to support trading operations in these securities in penny increments. Not later than 90 days after April 5, 2012, the Commission shall submit to Congress a report on the findings of the study.

(B) DESIGNATION.—If the Commission determines that the securities of emerging growth companies should be quoted and traded using a minimum increment of greater than \$0.01, the Commission may, by rule not later than 180 days after April 5, 2012, designate a minimum increment for the securities of emerging growth companies that is greater than \$0.01 but less than \$0.10 for use in all quoting and trading of securities in any exchange or other execution venue.

(d) National Market Advisory Board

(1) Not later than one hundred eighty days after June 4, 1975, the Commission shall establish a National Market Advisory Board (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Advisory Board") to be composed of fifteen members, not all of whom shall be from the same geographical area of the United States, appointed by the Commission for a term specified by the Commission of not less than two years or more than five years. The Advisory Board shall consist of persons associated with brokers and dealers (who shall be a majority) and persons not so associated who are representative of the public and, to the extent feasible, have knowledge of the securities markets of the United States.

(2) It shall be the responsibility of the Advisory Board to formulate and furnish to the Commission its views on significant regulatory proposals made by the Commission or any self-regulatory organization concerning the establishment, operation, and regulation of the markets for securities in the United States.

(3)(A) The Advisory Board shall study and make recommendations to the Commission as to the steps it finds appropriate to facilitate the establishment of a national market system. In so doing, the Advisory Board shall assume the responsibilities of any advisory committee appointed to advise the Commission with respect to the national market system which is in existence at the time of the establishment of the Advisory Board.

(B) The Advisory Board shall study the possible need for modifications of the scheme of self-regulation provided for in this chapter so as to adapt it to a national market system, including the need for the establishment of a new self-regulatory organization (hereinafter in this section referred to as a "National Market Regulatory Board" or "Regulatory Board") to administer the national market system. In the event the Advisory Board determines a National Market Regulatory Board should be established, it shall make recommendations as to:

- (i) the point in time at which a Regulatory Board should be established;
- (ii) the composition of a Regulatory Board;
- (iii) the scope of the authority of a Regulatory Board;
- (iv) the relationship of a Regulatory Board to the Commission and to existing self-regulatory organizations; and
- (v) the manner in which a Regulatory Board should be funded.

The Advisory Board shall report to the Congress, on or before December 31, 1976, the results of such study and its recommendations, including such recommendations for legislation as it deems appropriate.

(C) In carrying out its responsibilities under this paragraph, the Advisory Board shall consult with self-regulatory organizations, brokers, dealers, securities information processors, issuers, investors, representatives of Government agencies, and other persons interested or likely to participate in the establishment, operation, or regulation of the national market system.

(e) National markets system for security futures products

(1) Consultation and cooperation required

With respect to security futures products, the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall consult and cooperate so that, to the maximum extent practicable, their respective regulatory responsibilities may be fulfilled and the rules and regulations applicable to security futures products may foster a national market system for security futures products if the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission jointly determine that such a system would be consistent with the congressional findings in subsection (a)(1). In accordance with this objective, the Commission shall, at least 15 days prior to the issuance for public comment of any proposed rule or regulation under this section concerning security futures products, consult and request the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

(2) Application of rules by order of CFTC

No rule adopted pursuant to this section shall be applied to any person with respect to the trading of security futures products on an exchange that is registered under section 78f(g) of this

title unless the Commodity Futures Trading Commission has issued an order directing that such rule is applicable to such persons.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §11A, as added Pub. L. 94–29, §7, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 111; amended Pub. L. 98–620, title IV, §402(14), Nov. 8, 1984, 98 Stat. 3358; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §§313, 314, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1256; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(c)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–430; Pub. L. 112–106, title I, §106(b), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 312; Pub. L. 117–286, §4(a)(62), Dec. 27, 2022, 136 Stat. 4312.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (a)(3)(A). Pub. L. 117–286 substituted "chapter 10 of title 5 (which shall be in addition to the National Market Advisory Board established pursuant to subsection (d) of this section)," for "the Federal Advisory Committee Act (which shall be in addition to the National Market Advisory Board established pursuant to subsection (d) of this section)".

2012—Subsec. (c)(6). Pub. L. 112–106 added par. (6).

2000—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 106–554 added subsec. (e).

1987—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 100–181, §313(1), substituted "transactions" for "transaction".

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 100–181, §313(2), struck out "On or before the ninetieth day following June 4, 1975, the Commission shall (i) report to the Congress the results of its review, including the effects on competition of such rules, and (ii) commence a proceeding in accordance with the provisions of section 78s(c) of this title to amend any such rule imposing a burden on competition which does not appear to the Commission to be necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter. The Commission shall conclude any such proceeding within ninety days of the date of publication of notice of its commencement."

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100–181, §314, struck out subsec. (e) which read as follows: "The Commission is authorized and directed to make a study of the extent to which persons excluded from the definitions of 'broker' and 'dealer' maintain accounts on behalf of public customers for buying and selling securities registered under section 78l of this title and whether such exclusions are consistent with the protection of investors and the other purposes of this chapter. The Commission shall report to the Congress, on or before December 31, 1976, the results of its study together with such recommendations for legislation as it deems advisable."

1984—Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 98–620 struck out designation "(A)" after "(4)", and struck out subpar. (B) which provided that review pursuant to section 78y(b) of this title of any rule promulgated by the Commission in accordance with any proceeding commenced pursuant to this paragraph would, except as to causes the court considers of greater importance, take precedence on the docket over all other causes and had to be assigned for consideration at the earliest practicable date and expedited in every way.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–620 not applicable to cases pending on Nov. 8, 1984, see section 403 of Pub. L. 98–620, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1657 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective June 4, 1975, except for subsec. (b) which is effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES

Advisory committees established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless, in the case of a committee established by the

President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee established by the Congress, its duration is otherwise provided for by law. See section 1013 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

¹ So in original. Probably should be "are hereinafter".

² So in original. The comma probably should not appear.

§78l. Registration requirements for securities

(a) General requirement of registration

It shall be unlawful for any member, broker, or dealer to effect any transaction in any security (other than an exempted security) on a national securities exchange unless a registration is effective as to such security for such exchange in accordance with the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder. The provisions of this subsection shall not apply in respect of a security futures product traded on a national securities exchange.

(b) Procedure for registration; information

A security may be registered on a national securities exchange by the issuer filing an application with the exchange (and filing with the Commission such duplicate originals thereof as the Commission may require), which application shall contain—

(1) Such information, in such detail, as to the issuer and any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by, or under direct or indirect common control with, the issuer, and any guarantor of the security as to principal or interest or both, as the Commission may by rules and regulations require, as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, in respect of the following:

- (A) the organization, financial structure, and nature of the business;
- (B) the terms, position, rights, and privileges of the different classes of securities outstanding;
- (C) the terms on which their securities are to be, and during the preceding three years have been, offered to the public or otherwise;
- (D) the directors, officers, and underwriters, and each security holder of record holding more than 10 per centum of any class of any equity security of the issuer (other than an exempted security), their remuneration and their interests in the securities of, and their material contracts with, the issuer and any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by, or under direct or indirect common control with, the issuer;
- (E) remuneration to others than directors and officers exceeding \$20,000 per annum;
- (F) bonus and profit-sharing arrangements;
- (G) management and service contracts;
- (H) options existing or to be created in respect of their securities;
- (I) material contracts, not made in the ordinary course of business, which are to be executed in whole or in part at or after the filing of the application or which were made not more than two years before such filing, and every material patent or contract for a material patent right shall be deemed a material contract;
- (J) balance sheets for not more than the three preceding fiscal years, certified if required by the rules and regulations of the Commission by a registered public accounting firm;
- (K) profit and loss statements for not more than the three preceding fiscal years, certified if required by the rules and regulations of the Commission by a registered public accounting firm; and
- (L) any further financial statements which the Commission may deem necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors.

(2) Such copies of articles of incorporation, bylaws, trust indentures, or corresponding documents by whatever name known, underwriting arrangements, and other similar documents of,

and voting trust agreements with respect to, the issuer and any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by, or under direct or indirect common control with, the issuer as the Commission may require as necessary or appropriate for the proper protection of investors and to insure fair dealing in the security.

(3) Such copies of material contracts, referred to in paragraph (1)(I) above, as the Commission may require as necessary or appropriate for the proper protection of investors and to insure fair dealing in the security.

(c) Additional or alternative information

If in the judgment of the Commission any information required under subsection (b) is inapplicable to any specified class or classes of issuers, the Commission shall require in lieu thereof the submission of such other information of comparable character as it may deem applicable to such class of issuers.

(d) Effective date of registration; withdrawal of registration

If the exchange authorities certify to the Commission that the security has been approved by the exchange for listing and registration, the registration shall become effective thirty days after the receipt of such certification by the Commission or within such shorter period of time as the Commission may determine. A security registered with a national securities exchange may be withdrawn or stricken from listing and registration in accordance with the rules of the exchange and, upon such terms as the Commission may deem necessary to impose for the protection of investors, upon application by the issuer or the exchange to the Commission; whereupon the issuer shall be relieved from further compliance with the provisions of this section and section 78m of this title and any rules or regulations under such sections as to the securities so withdrawn or stricken. An unissued security may be registered only in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(e) Exemption from provisions of section for period ending not later than July 1, 1935

Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this section, the Commission may by such rules and regulations as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, permit securities listed on any exchange at the time the registration of such exchange as a national securities exchange becomes effective, to be registered for a period ending not later than July 1, 1935, without complying with the provisions of this section.

(f) Unlisted trading privileges for security originally listed on another national exchange

(1)(A) Notwithstanding the preceding subsections of this section, any national securities exchange, in accordance with the requirements of this subsection and the rules hereunder, may extend unlisted trading privileges to—

(i) any security that is listed and registered on a national securities exchange, subject to subparagraph (B); and

(ii) any security that is otherwise registered pursuant to this section, or that would be required to be so registered except for the exemption from registration provided in subparagraph (B) or (G) of subsection (g)(2), subject to subparagraph (E) of this paragraph.

(B) A national securities exchange may not extend unlisted trading privileges to a security described in subparagraph (A)(i) during such interval, if any, after the commencement of an initial public offering of such security, as is or may be required pursuant to subparagraph (C).

(C) Not later than 180 days after October 22, 1994, the Commission shall prescribe, by rule or regulation, the duration of the interval referred to in subparagraph (B), if any, as the Commission determines to be necessary or appropriate for the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter. Until the earlier of the effective date of such rule or regulation or 240 days after October 22,

1994, such interval shall begin at the opening of trading on the day on which such security commences trading on the national securities exchange with which such security is registered and end at the conclusion of the next day of trading.

(D) The Commission may prescribe, by rule or regulation such additional procedures or requirements for extending unlisted trading privileges to any security as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate for the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(E) No extension of unlisted trading privileges to securities described in subparagraph (A)(ii) may occur except pursuant to a rule, regulation, or order of the Commission approving such extension or extensions. In promulgating such rule or regulation or in issuing such order, the Commission—

(i) shall find that such extension or extensions of unlisted trading privileges is consistent with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, and otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter;

(ii) shall take account of the public trading activity in such securities, the character of such trading, the impact of such extension on the existing markets for such securities, and the desirability of removing impediments to and the progress that has been made toward the development of a national market system; and

(iii) shall not permit a national securities exchange to extend unlisted trading privileges to such securities if any rule of such national securities exchange would unreasonably impair the ability of a dealer to solicit or effect transactions in such securities for its own account, or would unreasonably restrict competition among dealers in such securities or between such dealers acting in the capacity of market makers who are specialists and such dealers who are not specialists.

(F) An exchange may continue to extend unlisted trading privileges in accordance with this paragraph only if the exchange and the subject security continue to satisfy the requirements for eligibility under this paragraph, including any rules and regulations issued by the Commission pursuant to this paragraph, except that unlisted trading privileges may continue with regard to securities which had been admitted on such exchange prior to July 1, 1964, notwithstanding the failure to satisfy such requirements. If unlisted trading privileges in a security are discontinued pursuant to this subparagraph, the exchange shall cease trading in that security, unless the exchange and the subject security thereafter satisfy the requirements of this paragraph and the rules issued hereunder.

(G) For purposes of this paragraph—

(i) a security is the subject of an initial public offering if—

(I) the offering of the subject security is registered under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.]; and

(II) the issuer of the security, immediately prior to filing the registration statement with respect to the offering, was not subject to the reporting requirements of section 78m or 78o(d) of this title; and

(ii) an initial public offering of such security commences at the opening of trading on the day on which such security commences trading on the national securities exchange with which such security is registered.

(2)(A) At any time within 60 days of commencement of trading on an exchange of a security pursuant to unlisted trading privileges, the Commission may summarily suspend such unlisted trading privileges on the exchange. Such suspension shall not be reviewable under section 78y of this title and shall not be deemed to be a final agency action for purposes of section 704 of title 5. Upon such suspension—

(i) the exchange shall cease trading in the security by the close of business on the date of such suspension, or at such time as the Commission may prescribe by rule or order for the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter; and

(ii) if the exchange seeks to extend unlisted trading privileges to the security, the exchange shall file an application to reinstate its ability to do so with the Commission pursuant to such procedures as the Commission may prescribe by rule or order for the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(B) A suspension under subparagraph (A) shall remain in effect until the Commission, by order, grants approval of an application to reinstate, as described in subparagraph (A)(ii).

(C) A suspension under subparagraph (A) shall not affect the validity or force of an extension of unlisted trading privileges in effect prior to such suspension.

(D) The Commission shall not approve an application by a national securities exchange to reinstate its ability to extend unlisted trading privileges to a security unless the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that the extension of unlisted trading privileges pursuant to such application is consistent with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, and otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter. If the application is made to reinstate unlisted trading privileges to a security described in paragraph (1)(A)(ii), the Commission—

(i) shall take account of the public trading activity in such security, the character of such trading, the impact of such extension on the existing markets for such a security, and the desirability of removing impediments to and the progress that has been made toward the development of a national market system; and

(ii) shall not grant any such application if any rule of the national securities exchange making application under this subsection would unreasonably impair the ability of a dealer to solicit or effect transactions in such security for its own account, or would unreasonably restrict competition among dealers in such security or between such dealers acting in the capacity of marketmakers who are specialists and such dealers who are not specialists.

(3) Notwithstanding paragraph (2), the Commission shall by rules and regulations suspend unlisted trading privileges in whole or in part for any or all classes of securities for a period not exceeding twelve months, if it deems such suspension necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors or to prevent evasion of the purposes of this chapter.

(4) On the application of the issuer of any security for which unlisted trading privileges on any exchange have been continued or extended pursuant to this subsection, or of any broker or dealer who makes or creates a market for such security, or of any other person having a bona fide interest in the question of termination or suspension of such unlisted trading privileges, or on its own motion, the Commission shall by order terminate, or suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months, such unlisted trading privileges for such security if the Commission finds, after appropriate notice and opportunity for hearing, that such termination or suspension is necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(5) In any proceeding under this subsection in which appropriate notice and opportunity for hearing are required, notice of not less than ten days to the applicant in such proceeding, to the issuer of the security involved, to the exchange which is seeking to continue or extend or has continued or extended unlisted trading privileges for such security, and to the exchange, if any, on which such security is listed and registered, shall be deemed adequate notice, and any broker or dealer who makes or creates a market for such security, and any other person having a bona fide interest in such proceeding, shall upon application be entitled to be heard.

(6) Any security for which unlisted trading privileges are continued or extended pursuant to this subsection shall be deemed to be registered on a national securities exchange within the meaning of this chapter. The powers and duties of the Commission under this chapter shall be applicable to the rules of an exchange in respect of any such security. The Commission may, by such rules and regulations as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, either unconditionally or upon specified terms and conditions, or for stated periods, exempt such securities from the operation of any provision of section 78m, 78n, or 78p of this title.

(g) Registration of securities by issuer; exemptions

(1) Every issuer which is engaged in interstate commerce, or in a business affecting interstate commerce, or whose securities are traded by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce shall—

(A) within 120 days after the last day of its first fiscal year ended on which the issuer has total assets exceeding \$10,000,000 and a class of equity security (other than an exempted security) held of record by either—

- (i) 2,000 persons, or
- (ii) 500 persons who are not accredited investors (as such term is defined by the Commission), and

(B) in the case of an issuer that is a bank, a savings and loan holding company (as defined in section 1467a of title 12), or a bank holding company, as such term is defined in section 1841 of title 12, not later than 120 days after the last day of its first fiscal year ended after the effective date of this subsection, on which the issuer has total assets exceeding \$10,000,000 and a class of equity security (other than an exempted security) held of record by 2,000 or more persons,

register such security by filing with the Commission a registration statement (and such copies thereof as the Commission may require) with respect to such security containing such information and documents as the Commission may specify comparable to that which is required in an application to register a security pursuant to subsection (b) of this section. Each such registration statement shall become effective sixty days after filing with the Commission or within such shorter period as the Commission may direct. Until such registration statement becomes effective it shall not be deemed filed for the purposes of section 78r of this title. Any issuer may register any class of equity security not required to be registered by filing a registration statement pursuant to the provisions of this paragraph. The Commission is authorized to extend the date upon which any issuer or class of issuers is required to register a security pursuant to the provisions of this paragraph.

(2) The provisions of this subsection shall not apply in respect of—

(A) any security listed and registered on a national securities exchange.

(B) any security issued by an investment company registered pursuant to section 80a-8 of this title.

(C) any security, other than permanent stock, guaranty stock, permanent reserve stock, or any similar certificate evidencing nonwithdrawable capital, issued by a savings and loan association, building and loan association, cooperative bank, homestead association, or similar institution, which is supervised and examined by State or Federal authority having supervision over any such institution.

(D) any security of an issuer organized and operated exclusively for religious, educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, or reformatory purposes and not for pecuniary profit, and no part of the net earnings of which inures to the benefit of any private shareholder or individual; or any security of a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 80a-3(c)(10)(B) of this title.

(E) any security of an issuer which is a "cooperative association" as defined in the Agricultural Marketing Act, approved June 15, 1929, as amended [12 U.S.C. 1141 et seq.], or a federation of such cooperative associations, if such federation possesses no greater powers or purposes than cooperative associations so defined.

(F) any security issued by a mutual or cooperative organization which supplies a commodity or service primarily for the benefit of its members and operates not for pecuniary profit, but only if the security is part of a class issuable only to persons who purchase commodities or services from the issuer, the security is transferable only to a successor in interest or occupancy of premises serviced or to be served by the issuer, and no dividends are payable to the holder of the security.

(G) any security issued by an insurance company if all of the following conditions are met:

- (i) Such insurance company is required to and does file an annual statement with the Commissioner of Insurance (or other officer or agency performing a similar function) of its

domiciliary State, and such annual statement conforms to that prescribed by the National Association of Insurance Commissioners or in the determination of such State commissioner, officer or agency substantially conforms to that so prescribed.

(ii) Such insurance company is subject to regulation by its domiciliary State of proxies, consents, or authorizations in respect of securities issued by such company and such regulation conforms to that prescribed by the National Association of Insurance Commissioners.

(iii) After July 1, 1966, the purchase and sales of securities issued by such insurance company by beneficial owners, directors, or officers of such company are subject to regulation (including reporting) by its domiciliary State substantially in the manner provided in section 78p of this title.

(H) any interest or participation in any collective trust funds maintained by a bank or in a separate account maintained by an insurance company which interest or participation is issued in connection with (i) a stock-bonus, pension, or profit-sharing plan which meets the requirements for qualification under section 401 of title 26, (ii) an annuity plan which meets the requirements for deduction of the employer's contribution under section 404(a)(2) of title 26, or (iii) a church plan, company, or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 80a-3(c)(14) of this title.

(3) The Commission may by rules or regulations or, on its own motion, after notice and opportunity for hearing, by order, exempt from this subsection any security of a foreign issuer, including any certificate of deposit for such a security, if the Commission finds that such exemption is in the public interest and is consistent with the protection of investors.

(4) Registration of any class of security pursuant to this subsection shall be terminated ninety days, or such shorter period as the Commission may determine, after the issuer files a certification with the Commission that the number of holders of record of such class of security is reduced to less than 300 persons, or, in the case of a bank, a savings and loan holding company (as defined in section 1467a of title 12), or a bank holding company, as such term is defined in section 1841 of title 12, 1,200 persons persons.¹ The Commission shall after notice and opportunity for hearing deny termination of registration if it finds that the certification is untrue. Termination of registration shall be deferred pending final determination on the question of denial.

(5) For the purposes of this subsection the term "class" shall include all securities of an issuer which are of substantially similar character and the holders of which enjoy substantially similar rights and privileges. The Commission may for the purpose of this subsection define by rules and regulations the terms "total assets" and "held of record" as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors in order to prevent circumvention of the provisions of this subsection. For purposes of this subsection, a security futures product shall not be considered a class of equity security of the issuer of the securities underlying the security futures product. For purposes of determining whether an issuer is required to register a security with the Commission pursuant to paragraph (1), the definition of "held of record" shall not include securities held by persons who received the securities pursuant to an employee compensation plan in transactions exempted from the registration requirements of section 5 of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77e].

(6) EXCLUSION FOR PERSONS HOLDING CERTAIN SECURITIES.—The Commission shall, by rule, exempt, conditionally or unconditionally, securities acquired pursuant to an offering made under section 4(6)² of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77d(a)(6)] from the provisions of this subsection.

(h) Exemption by rules and regulations from certain provisions of section

The Commission may by rules and regulations, or upon application of an interested person, by order, after notice and opportunity for hearing, exempt in whole or in part any issuer or class of issuers from the provisions of subsection (g) of this section or from section 78m, 78n, or 78o(d) of this title or may exempt from section 78p of this title any officer, director, or beneficial owner of

securities of any issuer, any security of which is required to be registered pursuant to subsection (g) hereof, upon such terms and conditions and for such period as it deems necessary or appropriate, if the Commission finds, by reason of the number of public investors, amount of trading interest in the securities, the nature and extent of the activities of the issuer, income or assets of the issuer, or otherwise, that such action is not inconsistent with the public interest or the protection of investors. The Commission may, for the purposes of any of the above-mentioned sections or subsections of this chapter, classify issuers and prescribe requirements appropriate for each such class.

(i) Securities issued by banks

In respect of any securities issued by banks and savings associations the deposits of which are insured in accordance with the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1811 et seq.], the powers, functions, and duties vested in the Commission to administer and enforce this section and sections 78j-1(m), 78m, 78n(a), 78n(c), 78n(d), 78n(f), and 78p of this title, and sections 7241, 7242, 7243, 7244, 7261(b), 7262, 7264, and 7265 of this title, (1) with respect to national banks and Federal savings associations, the accounts of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ³ are vested in the Comptroller of the Currency, (2) with respect to all other member banks of the Federal Reserve System are vested in the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and (3) with respect to all other insured banks and State savings associations, the accounts of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, are vested in the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation. The Comptroller of the Currency, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation shall have the power to make such rules and regulations as may be necessary for the execution of the functions vested in them as provided in this subsection. In carrying out their responsibilities under this subsection, the agencies named in the first sentence of this subsection shall issue substantially similar regulations to regulations and rules issued by the Commission under this section and sections 78j-1(m), 78m, 78n(a), 78n(c), 78n(d), 78n(f), and 78p of this title, and sections 7241, 7242, 7243, 7244, 7261(b), 7262, 7264, and 7265 of this title, unless they find that implementation of substantially similar regulations with respect to insured banks and insured institutions are not necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for protection of investors, and publish such findings, and the detailed reasons therefor, in the Federal Register. Such regulations of the above-named agencies, or the reasons for failure to publish such substantially similar regulations to those of the Commission, shall be published in the Federal Register within 120 days of October 28, 1974, and, thereafter, within 60 days of any changes made by the Commission in its relevant regulations and rules.

(j) Denial, suspension, or revocation of registration; notice and hearing

The Commission is authorized, by order, as it deems necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors to deny, to suspend the effective date of, to suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months, or to revoke the registration of a security, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that the issuer, of such security has failed to comply with any provision of this chapter or the rules and regulations thereunder. No member of a national securities exchange, broker, or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce the purchase or sale of, any security the registration of which has been and is suspended or revoked pursuant to the preceding sentence.

(k) Trading suspensions; emergency authority

(1) Trading suspensions

If in its opinion the public interest and the protection of investors so require, the Commission is authorized by order—

(A) summarily to suspend trading in any security (other than an exempted security) for a period not exceeding 10 business days, and

(B) summarily to suspend all trading on any national securities exchange or otherwise, in securities other than exempted securities, for a period not exceeding 90 calendar days.

The action described in subparagraph (B) shall not take effect unless the Commission notifies the

President of its decision and the President notifies the Commission that the President does not disapprove of such decision. If the actions described in subparagraph (A) or (B) involve a security futures product, the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

(2) Emergency orders

(A) In general

The Commission, in an emergency, may by order summarily take such action to alter, supplement, suspend, or impose requirements or restrictions with respect to any matter or action subject to regulation by the Commission or a self-regulatory organization under the securities laws, as the Commission determines is necessary in the public interest and for the protection of investors—

- (i) to maintain or restore fair and orderly securities markets (other than markets in exempted securities);
- (ii) to ensure prompt, accurate, and safe clearance and settlement of transactions in securities (other than exempted securities); or
- (iii) to reduce, eliminate, or prevent the substantial disruption by the emergency of—
 - (I) securities markets (other than markets in exempted securities), investment companies, or any other significant portion or segment of such markets; or
 - (II) the transmission or processing of securities transactions (other than transactions in exempted securities).

(B) Effective period

An order of the Commission under this paragraph shall continue in effect for the period specified by the Commission, and may be extended. Except as provided in subparagraph (C), an order of the Commission under this paragraph may not continue in effect for more than 10 business days, including extensions.

(C) Extension

An order of the Commission under this paragraph may be extended to continue in effect for more than 10 business days if, at the time of the extension, the Commission finds that the emergency still exists and determines that the continuation of the order beyond 10 business days is necessary in the public interest and for the protection of investors to attain an objective described in clause (i), (ii), or (iii) of subparagraph (A). In no event shall an order of the Commission under this paragraph continue in effect for more than 30 calendar days.

(D) Security futures

If the actions described in subparagraph (A) involve a security futures product, the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

(E) Exemption

In exercising its authority under this paragraph, the Commission shall not be required to comply with the provisions of—

- (i) section 78s(c) of this title; or
- (ii) section 553 of title 5.

(3) Termination of emergency actions by President

The President may direct that action taken by the Commission under paragraph (1)(B) or paragraph (2) of this subsection shall not continue in effect.

(4) Compliance with orders

No member of a national securities exchange, broker, or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce the purchase or sale of, any security in contravention of an order of the Commission under this subsection unless such order has been stayed, modified, or set aside as provided in paragraph (5)

of this subsection or has ceased to be effective upon direction of the President as provided in paragraph (3).

(5) Limitations on review of orders

An order of the Commission pursuant to this subsection shall be subject to review only as provided in section 78y(a) of this title. Review shall be based on an examination of all the information before the Commission at the time such order was issued. The reviewing court shall not enter a stay, writ of mandamus, or similar relief unless the court finds, after notice and hearing before a panel of the court, that the Commission's action is arbitrary, capricious, an abuse of discretion, or otherwise not in accordance with law.

(6) Consultation

Prior to taking any action described in paragraph (1)(B), the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Secretary of the Treasury, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, unless such consultation is impracticable in light of the emergency.

(7) Definition

For purposes of this subsection, the term "emergency" means—

(A) a major market disturbance characterized by or constituting—

- (i) sudden and excessive fluctuations of securities prices generally, or a substantial threat thereof, that threaten fair and orderly markets; or
- (ii) a substantial disruption of the safe or efficient operation of the national system for clearance and settlement of transactions in securities, or a substantial threat thereof; or

(B) a major disturbance that substantially disrupts, or threatens to substantially disrupt—

- (i) the functioning of securities markets, investment companies, or any other significant portion or segment of the securities markets; or
- (ii) the transmission or processing of securities transactions.

(l) Issuance of any security in contravention of rules and regulations; application to annuity contracts and variable life policies

It shall be unlawful for an issuer, any class of whose securities is registered pursuant to this section or would be required to be so registered except for the exemption from registration provided by subsection (g)(2)(B) or (g)(2)(G) of this section, by the use of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, or of the mails, to issue, either originally or upon transfer, any of such securities in a form or with a format which contravenes such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of transactions in securities. The provisions of this subsection shall not apply to variable annuity contracts or variable life policies issued by an insurance company or its separate accounts.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §12, 48 Stat. 892; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, §1, 49 Stat. 1375; Aug. 10, 1954, ch. 667, title II, §202, 68 Stat. 686; Pub. L. 88–467, §3, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 565; Pub. L. 90–439, §1, July 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 454; Pub. L. 91–547, §28(c), Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1435; Pub. L. 93–495, title I, §105(b), Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1503; Pub. L. 94–29, §§8, 9, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 117, 118; Pub. L. 99–514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §314, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1256; Pub. L. 101–73, title VII, §744(u)(2), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 441; Pub. L. 101–432, §2, Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 963; Pub. L. 103–389, §2, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4081; Pub. L. 104–62, §4(d), Dec. 8, 1995, 109 Stat. 685; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §§206(e), 208(b)(1), (2)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–431, 2763A–435; Pub. L. 107–204, §3(b)(4), title II, §205(c)(1), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 749, 774; Pub. L. 108–359, §1(c)(2), Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1666; Pub. L. 108–386, §8(f)(4), Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2232; Pub. L. 108–458, title VII, §7803(b), (c), Dec. 17, 2004, 118 Stat. 3861, 3862; Pub. L. 111–203, title III, §376(2), title IX, §986(a)(2), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1569, 1935; Pub. L. 112–106, title III, §303(a), title V, §§501, 502, title VI, §601(a), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 321, 325, 326; Pub. L. 114–94, div. G, title LXXXV, §85001(1), Dec. 4, 2015, 129 Stat. 1797.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (f), and (j), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (f)(1)(G)(i)(I), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The effective date of this subsection, referred to in subsec. (g)(1)(B), probably means the date of enactment of Pub. L. 112–106, which amended subsec. (g) of this section and was approved Apr. 5, 2012.

The Agricultural Marketing Act, approved June 15, 1929, as amended, referred to in subsec. (g)(2)(E), is act June 15, 1929, ch. 24, 46 Stat. 11, which is classified generally to chapter 7A (§1141 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1141j(e) of Title 12 and Tables.

Section 4(6) of the Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (g)(6), was redesignated section 4(a)(6) of that Act by Pub. L. 112–106, title II, §201(b)(1), (c)(1), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 314, and is classified to section 77d(a)(6) of this title.

The Federal Deposit Insurance Act, referred to in subsec. (i), is act Sept. 21, 1950, ch. 967, §2, 64 Stat. 873, which is classified generally to chapter 16 (§1811 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1811 of Title 12 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2015—Subsec. (g)(1)(B). Pub. L. 114–94, §85001(1)(A), inserted ", a savings and loan holding company (as defined in section 1467a of title 12)," after "is a bank".

Subsec. (g)(4). Pub. L. 114–94, §85001(1)(B), inserted ", a savings and loan holding company (as defined in section 1467a of title 12)," after "case of a bank".

2012—Subsec. (g)(1)(A). Pub. L. 112–106, §501, amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows: "within one hundred and twenty days after the last day of its first fiscal year ended after July 1, 1964, on which the issuer has total assets exceeding \$1,000,000 and a class of equity security (other than an exempted security) held of record by seven hundred and fifty or more persons; and".

Subsec. (g)(1)(B). Pub. L. 112–106, §601(a)(1), amended subpar. (B) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (B) read as follows: "within one hundred and twenty days after the last day of its first fiscal year ended after two years from July 1, 1964, on which the issuer has total assets exceeding \$1,000,000 and a class of equity security (other than an exempted security) held of record by five hundred or more but less than seven hundred and fifty persons,".

Subsec. (g)(4). Pub. L. 112–106, §601(a)(2), substituted "300 persons, or, in the case of a bank or a bank holding company, as such term is defined in section 1841 of title 12, 1,200 persons" for "three hundred".

Subsec. (g)(5). Pub. L. 112–106, §502, which directed that subsec. (g)(5) "as amended by section 302" of Pub. L. 112–106 be amended "in subparagraph (A)" by inserting at end "For purposes of determining whether an issuer is required to register a security with the Commission pursuant to paragraph (1), the definition of 'held of record' shall not include securities held by persons who received the securities pursuant to an employee compensation plan in transactions exempted from the registration requirements of section 5 of the Securities Act of 1933.", was executed by making the insertion at end of par. (5) to reflect the probable intent of Congress. Section 302 of Pub. L. 112–106 did not amend this section, and subsec. (g)(5) does not contain subpars.

Subsec. (g)(6). Pub. L. 112–106, §303(a), added par. (6).

2010—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 111–203, §376(2)(C), substituted "and the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation" for "the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, and the Office of Thrift Supervision" in second sentence.

Subsec. (i)(1). Pub. L. 111–203, §376(2)(A), inserted "and Federal savings associations, the accounts of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation" after "national banks".

Subsec. (i)(3), (4). Pub. L. 111–203, §376(2)(B), substituted "and (3) with respect to all other insured banks and State savings associations, the accounts of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, are vested in the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation" for "(3) with respect to all other insured banks are vested in the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, and (4) with respect to savings associations the accounts of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation are vested in the Office of Thrift Supervision".

Subsec. (k)(7). Pub. L. 111–203, §986(a)(2), amended par. (7) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (7) contained similar provisions defining the term "emergency" and provided that, notwithstanding section 78c(a)(47) of this title, the term "securities laws" did not include the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935.

2004—Subsec. (g)(2)(H)(iii). Pub. L. 108–359 added cl. (iii).

Subsec. (i)(1). Pub. L. 108–386 struck out "and banks operating under the Code of Law for the District of Columbia" after "national banks".

Subsec. (k)(2). Pub. L. 108–458, §7803(b)(1), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) provided Commission authority to make emergency orders.

Subsec. (k)(6), (7). Pub. L. 108–458, §7803(c), added pars. (6) and (7) and struck out heading and text of former par. (6). Text read as follows: "For purposes of this subsection, the term 'emergency' means a major market disturbance characterized by or constituting—

"(A) sudden and excessive fluctuations of securities prices generally, or a substantial threat thereof, that threaten fair and orderly markets, or

"(B) a substantial disruption of the safe or efficient operation of the national system for clearance and settlement of securities, or a substantial threat thereof."

2002—Subsec. (b)(1)(J), (K). Pub. L. 107–204, §205(c)(1), substituted "a registered public accounting firm" for "independent public accountants".

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 107–204, §3(b)(4)(B), substituted "and 78p of this title, and sections 7241, 7242, 7243, 7244, 7261(b), 7262, 7264, and 7265 of this title," for "and 78p of this title," in two places.

Pub. L. 107–204, §3(b)(4)(A), substituted "this section and sections 78j–1(m), 78m" for "this section and sections 78m" in two places.

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §208(b)(1)], inserted at end "The provisions of this subsection shall not apply in respect of a security futures product traded on a national securities exchange."

Subsec. (g)(5). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §208(b)(2)], inserted at end "For purposes of this subsection, a security futures product shall not be considered a class of equity security of the issuer of the securities underlying the security futures product."

Subsec. (k)(1). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(e)(1)], inserted at end "If the actions described in subparagraph (A) or (B) involve a security futures product, the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission."

Subsec. (k)(2)(B). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(e)(2)], inserted after first sentence "If the actions described in subparagraph (A) involve a security futures product, the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission."

1995—Subsec. (g)(2)(D). Pub. L. 104–62 inserted before period at end "; or any security of a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 80a–3(c)(10)(B) of this title".

1994—Subsec. (f)(1), (2). Pub. L. 103–389, §2(a), added pars. (1) and (2) and struck out former pars. (1) and (2) which related to extension of unlisted trading privileges for securities originally listed on another national exchange and approval process for application for extension of such privileges, respectively.

Subsec. (f)(3). Pub. L. 103–389, §2(b), substituted "Notwithstanding paragraph (2), the Commission" for "The Commission".

1990—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 101–432 amended subsec. (k) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (k) read as follows: "If in its opinion the public interest and the protection of investors so require, the Commission is authorized summarily to suspend trading in any security (other than an exempted security) for a period not exceeding ten days, or with the approval of the President, summarily to suspend all trading on any national securities exchange or otherwise, in securities other than exempted securities, for a period not exceeding ninety days. No member of a national securities exchange, broker, or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce the purchase or sale of, any security in which trading is so suspended."

1989—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 101–73, in first sentence, inserted "and savings associations" after "securities issued by banks", struck out "or institutions the accounts of which are insured by the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation" before ", the powers, functions, and duties", inserted new cl. (4) and struck out former cl. (4) which read "with respect to institutions the accounts of which are insured by the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation are vested in the Federal Home Loan Bank Board", and, in second sentence, substituted "Office of Thrift Supervision" for "Federal Home Loan Bank Board".

1987—Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 100–181 struck out subsec. (m) which read as follows: "The Commission is authorized and directed to make a study and investigation of the practice of recording the ownership of securities in the records of the issuer in other than the name of the beneficial owner of such securities to determine (1) whether such practice is consistent with the purposes of this chapter, with particular reference to

subsection (g) of this section and sections 78m, 78n, 78o(d), 78p, and 78q-1 of this title, and (2) whether steps can be taken to facilitate communications between issuers and the beneficial owners of their securities while at the same time retaining the benefits of such practice. The Commission shall report to the Congress its preliminary findings within six months after June 4, 1975, and its final conclusions and recommendations within one year of such date."

1986—Subsec. (g)(2)(H). Pub. L. 99-514 substituted "Internal Revenue Code of 1986" for "Internal Revenue Code of 1954", which for purposes of codification was translated as "title 26" thus requiring no change in text.

1975—Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 94-29, §8(1), added subpar. (C) and in provisions following subpar. (C), substituted "is based" for "was originally based" and "remains listed and registered on a national securities exchange" for "shall remain listed and registered on any other national securities exchange".

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 94-29, §8(1), substituted "after notice and opportunity for hearing" for "after appropriate notice and opportunity for hearing" and "consistent with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets and the protection of investors" for "necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors" in existing provisions and added the enumeration of matters to be taken into account by the Commission in considering an application for the extension of unlisted trading privileges to a security not listed and registered on a national securities exchange.

Subsec. (f)(6). Pub. L. 94-29, §8(2), substituted "this chapter" for "section 78s(b) of this title".

Subsecs. (j) to (m). Pub. L. 94-29, §9, added subsecs. (j) to (m).

1974—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 93-495 added coverage of institutions insured by the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation, cl. (4), and provisions authorizing the Federal Home Loan Bank Board to promulgate necessary rules and regulations, and substituted provisions relating to issuance of regulations in order to implement agency responsibility under this subsec. for provisions relating to the binding effect of rules, regulations, forms or orders issued or adopted by the Commission pursuant to this chapter.

1970—Subsec. (g)(2)(H). Pub. L. 91-547 added subpar. (H).

1968—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 90-439 inserted "78n(d), 78n(f)," after "78n(c)".

1964—Subsec. (b)(1)(I) to (L). Pub. L. 88-467, §3(a)(1), (2), added subpar. (I) and redesignated former subpars. (I) to (K) as (J) to (L), respectively.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 88-467, §3(a)(3), added par. (3).

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 88-467, §3(b), designated first par. as (1), redesignated cl. (1) as cl. (A) and substituted therein "July 1, 1964" for "March 1, 1934", redesignated cl. (2) as cl. (B) and struck out the provision for continuation of unlisted trading privileges, which is now incorporated in concluding sentence, and struck out cl. (3) which permitted a national security exchange to extend unlisted trading privileges to any security in respect to which there was available information substantially equivalent to that available in respect to a security duly listed and registered on a national securities exchange, so long as the registration statement was effective and the reports and data continued to be filed.

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 88-467, §3(b), designated first sentence of second par. as (2) and substituted therein "finds, after appropriate notice and opportunity for hearing, that the extension" for "finds that the continuation or extension", and struck out second through sixth sentences of such second par. which related as follows: the second sentence, to notice and opportunity for hearing, now incorporated in par. (2); the third sentence, to conditions (respecting sufficiently widespread public distribution and sufficient public trading activity) for approval of application to extend unlisted trading privileges to any security pursuant to former clauses (2) and (3) of subsec. (f); the fourth sentence, to terms and conditions (subjecting issuer, officers, and directors of issuer, and beneficial owners of more than 10 per centum of the securities to duties equivalent to duties if the securities were registered on a national security exchange) for approval of application to extend unlisted trading privileges to any security pursuant to former clause (3) of subsec. (f); the fifth sentence, to requirement for differentiation by national security exchanges between quotations or transactions in listed securities and in securities with unlisted trading privileges, now covered by section 78s(b) of this title; the sixth sentence, to grouping under separate headings of quotations or transactions in listed securities and in securities with unlisted trading privileges, in the publication of quotations or transactions.

Subsec. (f)(3). Pub. L. 88-467, §3(b), designated third par. as (3).

Subsec. (f)(4). Pub. L. 88-467, §3(b), designated second sentence of fourth par. as (4), struck out "by reason of inadequate public distribution of such security in the vicinity of said exchange, or by reason of inadequate public trading activity or of the character of trading therein on said exchange," before "such termination or suspension is necessary", and struck out first sentence of fourth par. which provided for the termination under certain conditions of unlisted trading privileges continued for any security pursuant to former cl. (1) of subsec. (f), now incorporated in par. (1)(A) of subsec. (f).

Subsec. (f)(5), (6). Pub. L. 88-467, §3(b), designated fifth and sixth pars. as (5) and (6).

Subsecs. (g) to (i). Pub. L. 88–467, §3(c)–(e), added subsecs. (g) to (i).

1954—Subsec. (d). Act Aug. 10, 1954, repealed last sentence requiring that rules and regulations limit the registration of unissued security to specified cases.

1936—Subsec. (f). Act May 27, 1936, amended first par. and added subsequent pars.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 986(a)(2) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 376(2) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the transfer date, see section 351 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 906 of Title 2, The Congress.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2004 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 108–386 effective Oct. 30, 2004, and, except as otherwise provided, applicable with respect to fiscal year 2005 and each succeeding fiscal year, see sections 8(i) and 9 of Pub. L. 108–386, set out as notes under section 321 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–62 applicable as defense to any claim in administrative and judicial actions pending on or commenced after Dec. 8, 1995, that any person, security, interest, or participation of type described in Pub. L. 104–62 is subject to the Securities Act of 1933, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Investment Company Act of 1940, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, or any State statute or regulation preempted as provided in section 80a–3a of this title, except as specifically provided in such statutes, see section 7 of Pub. L. 104–62, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1970 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 3(a), (c) of Pub. L. 88–467 effective July 1, 1964, and amendment by section 3(b), (d), (e) of Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1954 AMENDMENT

Amendment by act Aug. 10, 1954, effective 60 days after Aug. 10, 1954, see note under section 77b of this title.

RULEMAKING

Pub. L. 112–106, title III, §303(b), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 321, provided that: "The [Securities and Exchange] Commission shall issue a rule to carry out section 12(g)(6) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c) [probably should be 15 U.S.C. 78l(g)(6)], as added by this section, not later than 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 5, 2012]."

Pub. L. 112–106, title V, §503, Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 326, provided that: "The Securities and Exchange Commission shall revise the definition of 'held of record' pursuant to section 12(g)(5) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78l(g)(5)) to implement the amendment made by section 502 [amending this section]. The Commission shall also adopt safe harbor provisions that issuers can follow when determining whether holders of their securities received the securities pursuant to an employee compensation plan in transactions that were exempt from the registration requirements of section 5 of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77e]."

Pub. L. 112–106, title VI, §602, Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 327, provided that: "Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Apr. 5, 2012], the Securities and Exchange Commission shall issue final regulations to implement this title [amending this section and section 78o of this title] and the amendments

made by this title."

ADDITIONAL DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS

Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §953(b), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1904, as amended by Pub. L. 112–106, title I, §102(a)(3), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 309, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Commission shall amend section 229.402 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to require each issuer, other than an emerging growth company, as that term is defined in section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)], to disclose in any filing of the issuer described in section 229.10(a) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations (or any successor thereto)—

"(A) the median of the annual total compensation of all employees of the issuer, except the chief executive officer (or any equivalent position) of the issuer;

"(B) the annual total compensation of the chief executive officer (or any equivalent position) of the issuer; and

"(C) the ratio of the amount described in subparagraph (A) to the amount described in subparagraph (B).

"(2) TOTAL COMPENSATION.—For purposes of this subsection, the total compensation of an employee of an issuer shall be determined in accordance with section 229.402(c)(2)(x) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on the day before the date of enactment of this Act [July 21, 2010]."

[For definitions of "Commission" and "issuer" as used in section 953(b) of Pub. L. 111–203, set out above, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.]

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

¹ *So in original.*

² *See References in Text note below.*

³ *So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.*

§78l–1. Applications for unlisted trading privileges deemed filed under section 78l of this title

Any application to continue unlisted trading privileges for any security heretofore filed by any exchange and approved by the Commission pursuant to clause (1) of subsection (f) of section 78l of this title and rules and regulations thereunder shall be deemed to have been filed and approved pursuant to clause (1) of said subsection (f).

(May 27, 1936, ch. 462, §2, 49 Stat. 1377.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as a part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

§78m. Periodical and other reports

(a) Reports by issuer of security; contents

Every issuer of a security registered pursuant to section 78l of this title shall file with the Commission, in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as

necessary or appropriate for the proper protection of investors and to insure fair dealing in the security—

(1) such information and documents (and such copies thereof) as the Commission shall require to keep reasonably current the information and documents required to be included in or filed with an application or registration statement filed pursuant to section 78l of this title, except that the Commission may not require the filing of any material contract wholly executed before July 1, 1962.

(2) such annual reports (and such copies thereof), certified if required by the rules and regulations of the Commission by independent public accountants, and such quarterly reports (and such copies thereof), as the Commission may prescribe.

Every issuer of a security registered on a national securities exchange shall also file a duplicate original of such information, documents, and reports with the exchange. In any registration statement, periodic report, or other reports to be filed with the Commission, an emerging growth company need not present selected financial data in accordance with section 229.301 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, for any period prior to the earliest audited period presented in connection with its first registration statement that became effective under this chapter or the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.] and, with respect to any such statement or reports, an emerging growth company may not be required to comply with any new or revised financial accounting standard until such date that a company that is not an issuer (as defined under section 7201 of this title) is required to comply with such new or revised accounting standard, if such standard applies to companies that are not issuers.

(b) Form of report; books, records, and internal accounting; directives

(1) The Commission may prescribe, in regard to reports made pursuant to this chapter, the form or forms in which the required information shall be set forth, the items or details to be shown in the balance sheet and the earnings statement, and the methods to be followed in the preparation of reports, in the appraisal or valuation of assets and liabilities, in the determination of depreciation and depletion, in the differentiation of recurring and nonrecurring income, in the differentiation of investment and operating income, and in the preparation, where the Commission deems it necessary or desirable, of separate and/or consolidated balance sheets or income accounts of any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by the issuer, or any person under direct or indirect common control with the issuer; but in the case of the reports of any person whose methods of accounting are prescribed under the provisions of any law of the United States, or any rule or regulation thereunder, the rules and regulations of the Commission with respect to reports shall not be inconsistent with the requirements imposed by such law or rule or regulation in respect of the same subject matter (except that such rules and regulations of the Commission may be inconsistent with such requirements to the extent that the Commission determines that the public interest or the protection of investors so requires).

(2) Every issuer which has a class of securities registered pursuant to section 78l of this title and every issuer which is required to file reports pursuant to section 78o(d) of this title shall—

(A) make and keep books, records, and accounts, which, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the issuer;

(B) devise and maintain a system of internal accounting controls sufficient to provide reasonable assurances that—

(i) transactions are executed in accordance with management's general or specific authorization;

(ii) transactions are recorded as necessary (I) to permit preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or any other criteria applicable to such statements, and (II) to maintain accountability for assets;

(iii) access to assets is permitted only in accordance with management's general or specific authorization; and

(iv) the recorded accountability for assets is compared with the existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences; and

(C) notwithstanding any other provision of law, pay the allocable share of such issuer of a reasonable annual accounting support fee or fees, determined in accordance with section 7219 of this title.

(3)(A) With respect to matters concerning the national security of the United States, no duty or liability under paragraph (2) of this subsection shall be imposed upon any person acting in cooperation with the head of any Federal department or agency responsible for such matters if such act in cooperation with such head of a department or agency was done upon the specific, written directive of the head of such department or agency pursuant to Presidential authority to issue such directives. Each directive issued under this paragraph shall set forth the specific facts and circumstances with respect to which the provisions of this paragraph are to be invoked. Each such directive shall, unless renewed in writing, expire one year after the date of issuance.

(B) Each head of a Federal department or agency of the United States who issues a directive pursuant to this paragraph shall maintain a complete file of all such directives and shall, on October 1 of each year, transmit a summary of matters covered by such directives in force at any time during the previous year to the Permanent Select Committee on Intelligence of the House of Representatives and the Select Committee on Intelligence of the Senate.

(4) No criminal liability shall be imposed for failing to comply with the requirements of paragraph (2) of this subsection except as provided in paragraph (5) of this subsection.

(5) No person shall knowingly circumvent or knowingly fail to implement a system of internal accounting controls or knowingly falsify any book, record, or account described in paragraph (2).

(6) Where an issuer which has a class of securities registered pursuant to section 781 of this title or an issuer which is required to file reports pursuant to section 780(d) of this title holds 50 per centum or less of the voting power with respect to a domestic or foreign firm, the provisions of paragraph (2) require only that the issuer proceed in good faith to use its influence, to the extent reasonable under the issuer's circumstances, to cause such domestic or foreign firm to devise and maintain a system of internal accounting controls consistent with paragraph (2). Such circumstances include the relative degree of the issuer's ownership of the domestic or foreign firm and the laws and practices governing the business operations of the country in which such firm is located. An issuer which demonstrates good faith efforts to use such influence shall be conclusively presumed to have complied with the requirements of paragraph (2).

(7) For the purpose of paragraph (2) of this subsection, the terms "reasonable assurances" and "reasonable detail" mean such level of detail and degree of assurance as would satisfy prudent officials in the conduct of their own affairs.

(c) Alternative reports

If in the judgment of the Commission any report required under subsection (a) is inapplicable to any specified class or classes of issuers, the Commission shall require in lieu thereof the submission of such reports of comparable character as it may deem applicable to such class or classes of issuers.

(d) Reports by persons acquiring more than five per centum of certain classes of securities

(1) Any person who, after acquiring directly or indirectly the beneficial ownership of any equity security of a class which is registered pursuant to section 781 of this title, or any equity security of an insurance company which would have been required to be so registered except for the exemption contained in section 781(g)(2)(G) of this title, or any equity security issued by a closed-end investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-1 et seq.] or any equity security issued by a Native Corporation pursuant to section 1629c(d)(6) of title 43, or otherwise becomes or is deemed to become a beneficial owner of any of the foregoing upon the purchase or sale of a security-based swap that the Commission may define by rule, and is directly or indirectly the beneficial owner of more than 5 per centum of such class shall, within ten days after such acquisition or within such shorter time as the Commission may establish by rule, file with the

Commission, a statement containing such of the following information, and such additional information, as the Commission may by rules and regulations, prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors—

(A) the background, and identity, residence, and citizenship of, and the nature of such beneficial ownership by, such person and all other persons by whom or on whose behalf the purchases have been or are to be effected;

(B) the source and amount of the funds or other consideration used or to be used in making the purchases, and if any part of the purchase price is represented or is to be represented by funds or other consideration borrowed or otherwise obtained for the purpose of acquiring, holding, or trading such security, a description of the transaction and the names of the parties thereto, except that where a source of funds is a loan made in the ordinary course of business by a bank, as defined in section 78c(a)(6) of this title, if the person filing such statement so requests, the name of the bank shall not be made available to the public;

(C) if the purpose of the purchases or prospective purchases is to acquire control of the business of the issuer of the securities, any plans or proposals which such persons may have to liquidate such issuer, to sell its assets to or merge it with any other persons, or to make any other major change in its business or corporate structure;

(D) the number of shares of such security which are beneficially owned, and the number of shares concerning which there is a right to acquire, directly or indirectly, by (i) such person, and (ii) by each associate of such person, giving the background, identity, residence, and citizenship of each such associate; and

(E) information as to any contracts, arrangements, or understandings with any person with respect to any securities of the issuer, including but not limited to transfer of any of the securities, joint ventures, loan or option arrangements, puts or calls, guaranties of loans, guaranties against loss or guaranties of profits, division of losses or profits, or the giving or withholding of proxies, naming the persons with whom such contracts, arrangements, or understandings have been entered into, and giving the details thereof.

(2) If any material change occurs in the facts set forth in the statement filed with the Commission, an amendment shall be filed with the Commission, in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(3) When two or more persons act as a partnership, limited partnership, syndicate, or other group for the purpose of acquiring, holding, or disposing of securities of an issuer, such syndicate or group shall be deemed a "person" for the purposes of this subsection.

(4) In determining, for purposes of this subsection, any percentage of a class of any security, such class shall be deemed to consist of the amount of the outstanding securities of such class, exclusive of any securities of such class held by or for the account of the issuer or a subsidiary of the issuer.

(5) The Commission, by rule or regulation or by order, may permit any person to file in lieu of the statement required by paragraph (1) of this subsection or the rules and regulations thereunder, a notice stating the name of such person, the number of shares of any equity securities subject to paragraph (1) which are owned by him, the date of their acquisition and such other information as the Commission may specify, if it appears to the Commission that such securities were acquired by such person in the ordinary course of his business and were not acquired for the purpose of and do not have the effect of changing or influencing the control of the issuer nor in connection with or as a participant in any transaction having such purpose or effect.

(6) The provisions of this subsection shall not apply to—

(A) any acquisition or offer to acquire securities made or proposed to be made by means of a registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.];

(B) any acquisition of the beneficial ownership of a security which, together with all other acquisitions by the same person of securities of the same class during the preceding twelve months, does not exceed 2 per centum of that class;

(C) any acquisition of an equity security by the issuer of such security;

(D) any acquisition or proposed acquisition of a security which the Commission, by rules or regulations or by order, shall exempt from the provisions of this subsection as not entered into for the purpose of, and not having the effect of, changing or influencing the control of the issuer or otherwise as not comprehended within the purposes of this subsection.

(e) Purchase of securities by issuer

(1) It shall be unlawful for an issuer which has a class of equity securities registered pursuant to section 78l of this title, or which is a closed-end investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-1 et seq.], to purchase any equity security issued by it if such purchase is in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission, in the public interest or for the protection of investors, may adopt (A) to define acts and practices which are fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative, and (B) to prescribe means reasonably designed to prevent such acts and practices. Such rules and regulations may require such issuer to provide holders of equity securities of such class with such information relating to the reasons for such purchase, the source of funds, the number of shares to be purchased, the price to be paid for such securities, the method of purchase, and such additional information, as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, or which the Commission deems to be material to a determination whether such security should be sold.

(2) For the purpose of this subsection, a purchase by or for the issuer or any person controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the issuer, or a purchase subject to control of the issuer or any such person, shall be deemed to be a purchase by the issuer. The Commission shall have power to make rules and regulations implementing this paragraph in the public interest and for the protection of investors, including exemptive rules and regulations covering situations in which the Commission deems it unnecessary or inappropriate that a purchase of the type described in this paragraph shall be deemed to be a purchase by the issuer for purposes of some or all of the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(3) At the time of filing such statement as the Commission may require by rule pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection, the person making the filing shall pay to the Commission a fee at a rate that, subject to paragraph (4), is equal to \$92 ¹ per \$1,000,000 of the value of securities proposed to be purchased. The fee shall be reduced with respect to securities in an amount equal to any fee paid with respect to any securities issued in connection with the proposed transaction under section 6(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77f(b)], or the fee paid under that section shall be reduced in an amount equal to the fee paid to the Commission in connection with such transaction under this paragraph.

(4) ANNUAL ADJUSTMENT.—For each fiscal year, the Commission shall by order adjust the rate required by paragraph (3) for such fiscal year to a rate that is equal to the rate (expressed in dollars per million) that is applicable under section 6(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77f(b)] for such fiscal year.

(5) FEE COLLECTIONS.—Fees collected pursuant to this subsection for fiscal year 2012 and each fiscal year thereafter shall be deposited and credited as general revenue of the Treasury and shall not be available for obligation.

(6) EFFECTIVE DATE; PUBLICATION.—In exercising its authority under this subsection, the Commission shall not be required to comply with the provisions of section 553 of title 5. An adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (4) shall be published and take effect in accordance with section 6(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77f(b)).

(7) PRO RATA APPLICATION.—The rates per \$1,000,000 required by this subsection shall be applied pro rata to amounts and balances of less than \$1,000,000.

(f) Reports by institutional investment managers

(1) Every institutional investment manager which uses the mails, or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in the course of its business as an institutional investment manager and which exercises investment discretion with respect to accounts holding equity securities of a class described in subsection (d)(1) or otherwise becomes or is deemed to become a beneficial owner of any security of a class described in subsection (d)(1) upon the purchase or sale of a security-based swap that the

Commission may define by rule, having an aggregate fair market value on the last trading day in any of the preceding twelve months of at least \$100,000,000 or such lesser amount (but in no case less than \$10,000,000) as the Commission, by rule, may determine, shall file reports with the Commission in such form, for such periods, and at such times after the end of such periods as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe, but in no event shall such reports be filed for periods longer than one year or shorter than one quarter. Such reports shall include for each such equity security held on the last day of the reporting period by accounts (in aggregate or by type as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe) with respect to which the institutional investment manager exercises investment discretion (other than securities held in amounts which the Commission, by rule, determines to be insignificant for purposes of this subsection), the name of the issuer and the title, class, CUSIP number, number of shares or principal amount, and aggregate fair market value of each such security. Such reports may also include for accounts (in aggregate or by type) with respect to which the institutional investment manager exercises investment discretion such of the following information as the Commission, by rule, prescribes—

(A) the name of the issuer and the title, class, CUSIP number, number of shares or principal amount, and aggregate fair market value or cost or amortized cost of each other security (other than an exempted security) held on the last day of the reporting period by such accounts;

(B) the aggregate fair market value or cost or amortized cost of exempted securities (in aggregate or by class) held on the last day of the reporting period by such accounts;

(C) the number of shares of each equity security of a class described in subsection (d)(1) held on the last day of the reporting period by such accounts with respect to which the institutional investment manager possesses sole or shared authority to exercise the voting rights evidenced by such securities;

(D) the aggregate purchases and aggregate sales during the reporting period of each security (other than an exempted security) effected by or for such accounts; and

(E) with respect to any transaction or series of transactions having a market value of at least \$500,000 or such other amount as the Commission, by rule, may determine, effected during the reporting period by or for such accounts in any equity security of a class described in subsection (d)(1)—

- (i) the name of the issuer and the title, class, and CUSIP number of the security;
- (ii) the number of shares or principal amount of the security involved in the transaction;
- (iii) whether the transaction was a purchase or sale;
- (iv) the per share price or prices at which the transaction was effected;
- (v) the date or dates of the transaction;
- (vi) the date or dates of the settlement of the transaction;
- (vii) the broker or dealer through whom the transaction was effected;
- (viii) the market or markets in which the transaction was effected; and
- (ix) such other related information as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe.

(2) The Commission shall prescribe rules providing for the public disclosure of the name of the issuer and the title, class, CUSIP number, aggregate amount of the number of short sales of each security, and any additional information determined by the Commission following the end of the reporting period. At a minimum, such public disclosure shall occur every month.

(3) The Commission, by rule, or order, may exempt, conditionally or unconditionally, any institutional investment manager or security or any class of institutional investment managers or securities from any or all of the provisions of this subsection or the rules thereunder.

(4) The Commission shall make available to the public for a reasonable fee a list of all equity securities of a class described in subsection (d)(1), updated no less frequently than reports are required to be filed pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection. The Commission shall tabulate the information contained in any report filed pursuant to this subsection in a manner which will, in the view of the Commission, maximize the usefulness of the information to other Federal and State authorities and the public. Promptly after the filing of any such report, the Commission shall make the information contained therein conveniently available to the public for a reasonable fee in such

form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe, except that the Commission, as it determines to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, may delay or prevent public disclosure of any such information in accordance with section 552 of title 5. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, any such information identifying the securities held by the account of a natural person or an estate or trust (other than a business trust or investment company) shall not be disclosed to the public.

(5) In exercising its authority under this subsection, the Commission shall determine (and so state) that its action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors or to maintain fair and orderly markets or, in granting an exemption, that its action is consistent with the protection of investors and the purposes of this subsection. In exercising such authority the Commission shall take such steps as are within its power, including consulting with the Comptroller General of the United States, the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, the appropriate regulatory agencies, Federal and State authorities which, directly or indirectly, require reports from institutional investment managers of information substantially similar to that called for by this subsection, national securities exchanges, and registered securities associations, (A) to achieve uniform, centralized reporting of information concerning the securities holdings of and transactions by or for accounts with respect to which institutional investment managers exercise investment discretion, and (B) consistently with the objective set forth in the preceding subparagraph, to avoid unnecessarily duplicative reporting by, and minimize the compliance burden on, institutional investment managers. Federal authorities which, directly or indirectly, require reports from institutional investment managers of information substantially similar to that called for by this subsection shall cooperate with the Commission in the performance of its responsibilities under the preceding sentence. An institutional investment manager which is a bank, the deposits of which are insured in accordance with the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1811 et seq.], shall file with the appropriate regulatory agency a copy of every report filed with the Commission pursuant to this subsection.

(6)(A) For purposes of this subsection the term "institutional investment manager" includes any person, other than a natural person, investing in or buying and selling securities for its own account, and any person exercising investment discretion with respect to the account of any other person.

(B) The Commission shall adopt such rules as it deems necessary or appropriate to prevent duplicative reporting pursuant to this subsection by two or more institutional investment managers exercising investment discretion with respect to the same amount.²

(g) Statement of equity security ownership

(1) Any person who is directly or indirectly the beneficial owner of more than 5 per centum of any security of a class described in subsection (d)(1) of this section or otherwise becomes or is deemed to become a beneficial owner of any security of a class described in subsection (d)(1) upon the purchase or sale of a security-based swap that the Commission may define by rule shall file with the Commission a statement setting forth, in such form and at such time as the Commission may, by rule, prescribe—

(A) such person's identity, residence, and citizenship; and

(B) the number and description of the shares in which such person has an interest and the nature of such interest.

(2) If any material change occurs in the facts set forth in the statement filed with the Commission, an amendment shall be filed with the Commission, in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(3) When two or more persons act as a partnership, limited partnership, syndicate, or other group for the purpose of acquiring, holding, or disposing of securities of an issuer, such syndicate or group shall be deemed a "person" for the purposes of this subsection.

(4) In determining, for purposes of this subsection, any percentage of a class of any security, such class shall be deemed to consist of the amount of the outstanding securities of such class, exclusive

of any securities of such class held by or for the account of the issuer or a subsidiary of the issuer.

(5) In exercising its authority under this subsection, the Commission shall take such steps as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors (A) to achieve centralized reporting of information regarding ownership, (B) to avoid unnecessarily duplicative reporting by and minimize the compliance burden on persons required to report, and (C) to tabulate and promptly make available the information contained in any report filed pursuant to this subsection in a manner which will, in the view of the Commission, maximize the usefulness of the information to other Federal and State agencies and the public.

(6) The Commission may, by rule or order, exempt, in whole or in part, any person or class of persons from any or all of the reporting requirements of this subsection as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(h) Large trader reporting

(1) Identification requirements for large traders

For the purpose of monitoring the impact on the securities markets of securities transactions involving a substantial volume or a large fair market value or exercise value and for the purpose of otherwise assisting the Commission in the enforcement of this chapter, each large trader shall—

(A) provide such information to the Commission as the Commission may by rule or regulation prescribe as necessary or appropriate, identifying such large trader and all accounts in or through which such large trader effects such transactions; and

(B) identify, in accordance with such rules or regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate, to any registered broker or dealer by or through whom such large trader directly or indirectly effects securities transactions, such large trader and all accounts directly or indirectly maintained with such broker or dealer by such large trader in or through which such transactions are effected.

(2) Recordkeeping and reporting requirements for brokers and dealers

Every registered broker or dealer shall make and keep for prescribed periods such records as the Commission by rule or regulation prescribes as necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, with respect to securities transactions that equal or exceed the reporting activity level effected directly or indirectly by or through such registered broker or dealer or for any person that such broker or dealer knows is a large trader, or any person that such broker or dealer has reason to know is a large trader on the basis of transactions in securities effected by or through such broker or dealer. Such records shall be available for reporting to the Commission, or any self-regulatory organization that the Commission shall designate to receive such reports, on the morning of the day following the day the transactions were effected, and shall be reported to the Commission or a self-regulatory organization designated by the Commission immediately upon request by the Commission or such a self-regulatory organization. Such records and reports shall be in a format and transmitted in a manner prescribed by the Commission (including, but not limited to, machine readable form).

(3) Aggregation rules

The Commission may prescribe rules or regulations governing the manner in which transactions and accounts shall be aggregated for the purpose of this subsection, including aggregation on the basis of common ownership or control.

(4) Examination of broker and dealer records

All records required to be made and kept by registered brokers and dealers pursuant to this subsection with respect to transactions effected by large traders are subject at any time, or from time to time, to such reasonable periodic, special, or other examinations by representatives of the Commission as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(5) Factors to be considered in Commission actions

In exercising its authority under this subsection, the Commission shall take into account—

- (A) existing reporting systems;
- (B) the costs associated with maintaining information with respect to transactions effected by large traders and reporting such information to the Commission or self-regulatory organizations; and
- (C) the relationship between the United States and international securities markets.

(6) Exemptions

The Commission, by rule, regulation, or order, consistent with the purposes of this chapter, may exempt any person or class of persons or any transaction or class of transactions, either conditionally or upon specified terms and conditions or for stated periods, from the operation of this subsection, and the rules and regulations thereunder.

(7) Authority of Commission to limit disclosure of information

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission shall not be compelled to disclose any information required to be kept or reported under this subsection. Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Commission to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Commission from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this subsection shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552.

(8) Definitions

For purposes of this subsection—

(A) the term "large trader" means every person who, for his own account or an account for which he exercises investment discretion, effects transactions for the purchase or sale of any publicly traded security or securities by use of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or of the mails, or of any facility of a national securities exchange, directly or indirectly by or through a registered broker or dealer in an aggregate amount equal to or in excess of the identifying activity level;

(B) the term "publicly traded security" means any equity security (including an option on individual equity securities, and an option on a group or index of such securities) listed, or admitted to unlisted trading privileges, on a national securities exchange, or quoted in an automated interdealer quotation system;

(C) the term "identifying activity level" means transactions in publicly traded securities at or above a level of volume, fair market value, or exercise value as shall be fixed from time to time by the Commission by rule or regulation, specifying the time interval during which such transactions shall be aggregated;

(D) the term "reporting activity level" means transactions in publicly traded securities at or above a level of volume, fair market value, or exercise value as shall be fixed from time to time by the Commission by rule, regulation, or order, specifying the time interval during which such transactions shall be aggregated; and

(E) the term "person" has the meaning given in section 78c(a)(9) of this title and also includes two or more persons acting as a partnership, limited partnership, syndicate, or other group, but does not include a foreign central bank.

(i) Accuracy of financial reports

Each financial report that contains financial statements, and that is required to be prepared in accordance with (or reconciled to) generally accepted accounting principles under this chapter and filed with the Commission shall reflect all material correcting adjustments that have been identified by a registered public accounting firm in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and the rules and regulations of the Commission.

(j) Off-balance sheet transactions

Not later than 180 days after July 30, 2002, the Commission shall issue final rules providing that each annual and quarterly financial report required to be filed with the Commission shall disclose all material off-balance sheet transactions, arrangements, obligations (including contingent obligations), and other relationships of the issuer with unconsolidated entities or other persons, that may have a material current or future effect on financial condition, changes in financial condition, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures, capital resources, or significant components of revenues or expenses.

(k) Prohibition on personal loans to executives

(1) In general

It shall be unlawful for any issuer (as defined in section 7201 of this title), directly or indirectly, including through any subsidiary, to extend or maintain credit, to arrange for the extension of credit, or to renew an extension of credit, in the form of a personal loan to or for any director or executive officer (or equivalent thereof) of that issuer. An extension of credit maintained by the issuer on July 30, 2002, shall not be subject to the provisions of this subsection, provided that there is no material modification to any term of any such extension of credit or any renewal of any such extension of credit on or after July 30, 2002.

(2) Limitation

Paragraph (1) does not preclude any home improvement and manufactured home loans (as that term is defined in section 1464 of title 12), consumer credit (as defined in section 1602 of this title), or any extension of credit under an open end credit plan (as defined in section 1602 of this title), or a charge card (as defined in section 1637(c)(4)(e) of this title), or any extension of credit by a broker or dealer registered under section 78o of this title to an employee of that broker or dealer to buy, trade, or carry securities, that is permitted under rules or regulations of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System pursuant to section 78g of this title (other than an extension of credit that would be used to purchase the stock of that issuer), that is—

- (A) made or provided in the ordinary course of the consumer credit business of such issuer;
- (B) of a type that is generally made available by such issuer to the public; and
- (C) made by such issuer on market terms, or terms that are no more favorable than those offered by the issuer to the general public for such extensions of credit.

(3) Rule of construction for certain loans

Paragraph (1) does not apply to any loan made or maintained by an insured depository institution (as defined in section 3 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813)), if the loan is subject to the insider lending restrictions of section 375b of title 12.

(l) Real time issuer disclosures

Each issuer reporting under subsec. (a) or section 78o(d) of this title shall disclose to the public on a rapid and current basis such additional information concerning material changes in the financial condition or operations of the issuer, in plain English, which may include trend and qualitative information and graphic presentations, as the Commission determines, by rule, is necessary or useful for the protection of investors and in the public interest.

(m) Public availability of security-based swap transaction data

(1) In general

(A) Definition of real-time public reporting

In this paragraph, the term "real-time public reporting" means to report data relating to a security-based swap transaction, including price and volume, as soon as technologically practicable after the time at which the security-based swap transaction has been executed.

(B) Purpose

The purpose of this subsection is to authorize the Commission to make security-based swap transaction and pricing data available to the public in such form and at such times as the

Commission determines appropriate to enhance price discovery.

(C) General rule

The Commission is authorized to provide by rule for the public availability of security-based swap transaction, volume, and pricing data as follows:

(i) With respect to those security-based swaps that are subject to the mandatory clearing requirement described in section 78c-3(a)(1) of this title (including those security-based swaps that are excepted from the requirement pursuant to section 78c-3(g) of this title), the Commission shall require real-time public reporting for such transactions.

(ii) With respect to those security-based swaps that are not subject to the mandatory clearing requirement described in section 78c-3(a)(1) of this title, but are cleared at a registered clearing agency, the Commission shall require real-time public reporting for such transactions.

(iii) With respect to security-based swaps that are not cleared at a registered clearing agency and which are reported to a security-based swap data repository or the Commission under section 78c-3(a)(6) of this title,³ the Commission shall require real-time public reporting for such transactions, in a manner that does not disclose the business transactions and market positions of any person.

(iv) With respect to security-based swaps that are determined to be required to be cleared under section 78c-3(b) of this title but are not cleared, the Commission shall require real-time public reporting for such transactions.

(D) Registered entities and public reporting

The Commission may require registered entities to publicly disseminate the security-based swap transaction and pricing data required to be reported under this paragraph.

(E) Rulemaking required

With respect to the rule providing for the public availability of transaction and pricing data for security-based swaps described in clauses (i) and (ii) of subparagraph (C), the rule promulgated by the Commission shall contain provisions—

(i) to ensure such information does not identify the participants;

(ii) to specify the criteria for determining what constitutes a large notional security-based swap transaction (block trade) for particular markets and contracts;

(iii) to specify the appropriate time delay for reporting large notional security-based swap transactions (block trades) to the public; and

(iv) that take into account whether the public disclosure will materially reduce market liquidity.

(F) Timeliness of reporting

Parties to a security-based swap (including agents of the parties to a security-based swap) shall be responsible for reporting security-based swap transaction information to the appropriate registered entity in a timely manner as may be prescribed by the Commission.

(G) Reporting of swaps to registered security-based swap data repositories

Each security-based swap (whether cleared or uncleared) shall be reported to a registered security-based swap data repository.

(H) Registration of clearing agencies

A clearing agency may register as a security-based swap data repository.

(2) Semiannual and annual public reporting of aggregate security-based swap data

(A) In general

In accordance with subparagraph (B), the Commission shall issue a written report on a semiannual and annual basis to make available to the public information relating to—

(i) the trading and clearing in the major security-based swap categories; and

(ii) the market participants and developments in new products.

(B) Use; consultation

In preparing a report under subparagraph (A), the Commission shall—

- (i) use information from security-based swap data repositories and clearing agencies; and
- (ii) consult with the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency, the Bank for International Settlements, and such other regulatory bodies as may be necessary.

(C) Authority of Commission

The Commission may, by rule, regulation, or order, delegate the public reporting responsibilities of the Commission under this paragraph in accordance with such terms and conditions as the Commission determines to be appropriate and in the public interest.

(n) Security-based swap data repositories

(1) Registration requirement

It shall be unlawful for any person, unless registered with the Commission, directly or indirectly, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to perform the functions of a security-based swap data repository.

(2) Inspection and examination

Each registered security-based swap data repository shall be subject to inspection and examination by any representative of the Commission.

(3) Compliance with core principles

(A) In general

To be registered, and maintain registration, as a security-based swap data repository, the security-based swap data repository shall comply with—

- (i) the requirements and core principles described in this subsection; and
- (ii) any requirement that the Commission may impose by rule or regulation.

(B) Reasonable discretion of security-based swap data repository

Unless otherwise determined by the Commission, by rule or regulation, a security-based swap data repository described in subparagraph (A) shall have reasonable discretion in establishing the manner in which the security-based swap data repository complies with the core principles described in this subsection.

(4) Standard setting

(A) Data identification

(i) In general

In accordance with clause (ii), the Commission shall prescribe standards that specify the data elements for each security-based swap that shall be collected and maintained by each registered security-based swap data repository.

(ii) Requirement

In carrying out clause (i), the Commission shall prescribe consistent data element standards applicable to registered entities and reporting counterparties.

(B) Data collection and maintenance

The Commission shall prescribe data collection and data maintenance standards for security-based swap data repositories.

(C) Comparability

The standards prescribed by the Commission under this subsection shall be comparable to the data standards imposed by the Commission on clearing agencies in connection with their clearing of security-based swaps.

(5) Duties

A security-based swap data repository shall—

(A) accept data prescribed by the Commission for each security-based swap under subsection (b);

(B) confirm with both counterparties to the security-based swap the accuracy of the data that was submitted;

(C) maintain the data described in subparagraph (A) in such form, in such manner, and for such period as may be required by the Commission;

(D)(i) provide direct electronic access to the Commission (or any designee of the Commission, including another registered entity); and

(ii) provide the information described in subparagraph (A) in such form and at such frequency as the Commission may require to comply with the public reporting requirements set forth in subsection (m);

(E) at the direction of the Commission, establish automated systems for monitoring, screening, and analyzing security-based swap data;

(F) maintain the privacy of any and all security-based swap transaction information that the security-based swap data repository receives from a security-based swap dealer, counterparty, or any other registered entity; and

(G) on a confidential basis pursuant to section 78x of this title, upon request, and after notifying the Commission of the request, make available security-based swap data obtained by the security-based swap data repository, including individual counterparty trade and position data, to—

(i) each appropriate prudential regulator;

(ii) the Financial Stability Oversight Council;

(iii) the Commodity Futures Trading Commission;

(iv) the Department of Justice; and

(v) any other person that the Commission determines to be appropriate, including—

(I) foreign financial supervisors (including foreign futures authorities);

(II) foreign central banks;

(III) foreign ministries; and

(IV) other foreign authorities.

(H) **CONFIDENTIALITY AGREEMENT.**—Before the security-based swap data repository may share information with any entity described in subparagraph (G), the security-based swap data repository shall receive a written agreement from each entity stating that the entity shall abide by the confidentiality requirements described in section 78x of this title relating to the information on security-based swap transactions that is provided.

(6) Designation of chief compliance officer

(A) In general

Each security-based swap data repository shall designate an individual to serve as a chief compliance officer.

(B) Duties

The chief compliance officer shall—

(i) report directly to the board or to the senior officer of the security-based swap data repository;

(ii) review the compliance of the security-based swap data repository with respect to the requirements and core principles described in this subsection;

(iii) in consultation with the board of the security-based swap data repository, a body performing a function similar to the board of the security-based swap data repository, or the senior officer of the security-based swap data repository, resolve any conflicts of interest that may arise;

(iv) be responsible for administering each policy and procedure that is required to be established pursuant to this section;

(v) ensure compliance with this chapter (including regulations) relating to agreements, contracts, or transactions, including each rule prescribed by the Commission under this section;

(vi) establish procedures for the remediation of noncompliance issues identified by the chief compliance officer through any—

- (I) compliance office review;
- (II) look-back;
- (III) internal or external audit finding;
- (IV) self-reported error; or
- (V) validated complaint; and

(vii) establish and follow appropriate procedures for the handling, management response, remediation, retesting, and closing of noncompliance issues.

(C) Annual reports

(i) In general

In accordance with rules prescribed by the Commission, the chief compliance officer shall annually prepare and sign a report that contains a description of—

- (I) the compliance of the security-based swap data repository of the chief compliance officer with respect to this chapter (including regulations); and
- (II) each policy and procedure of the security-based swap data repository of the chief compliance officer (including the code of ethics and conflict of interest policies of the security-based swap data repository).

(ii) Requirements

A compliance report under clause (i) shall—

- (I) accompany each appropriate financial report of the security-based swap data repository that is required to be furnished to the Commission pursuant to this section; and
- (II) include a certification that, under penalty of law, the compliance report is accurate and complete.

(7) Core principles applicable to security-based swap data repositories

(A) Antitrust considerations

Unless necessary or appropriate to achieve the purposes of this chapter, the swap data repository shall not—

- (i) adopt any rule or take any action that results in any unreasonable restraint of trade; or
- (ii) impose any material anticompetitive burden on the trading, clearing, or reporting of transactions.

(B) Governance arrangements

Each security-based swap data repository shall establish governance arrangements that are transparent—

- (i) to fulfill public interest requirements; and
- (ii) to support the objectives of the Federal Government, owners, and participants.

(C) Conflicts of interest

Each security-based swap data repository shall—

- (i) establish and enforce rules to minimize conflicts of interest in the decision-making process of the security-based swap data repository; and
- (ii) establish a process for resolving any conflicts of interest described in clause (i).

(D) Additional duties developed by Commission

(i) In general

The Commission may develop 1 or more additional duties applicable to security-based swap data repositories.

(ii) Consideration of evolving standards

In developing additional duties under subparagraph (A),⁴ the Commission may take into consideration any evolving standard of the United States or the international community.

(iii) Additional duties for Commission designees

The Commission shall establish additional duties for any registrant described in subsection (m)(2)(C) in order to minimize conflicts of interest, protect data, ensure compliance, and guarantee the safety and security of the security-based swap data repository.

(8) Required registration for security-based swap data repositories

Any person that is required to be registered as a security-based swap data repository under this subsection shall register with the Commission, regardless of whether that person is also licensed under the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.] as a swap data repository.

(9) Rules

The Commission shall adopt rules governing persons that are registered under this subsection.

(o) Beneficial ownership

For purposes of this section and section 78p of this title, a person shall be deemed to acquire beneficial ownership of an equity security based on the purchase or sale of a security-based swap, only to the extent that the Commission, by rule, determines after consultation with the prudential regulators and the Secretary of the Treasury, that the purchase or sale of the security-based swap, or class of security-based swap, provides incidents of ownership comparable to direct ownership of the equity security, and that it is necessary to achieve the purposes of this section that the purchase or sale of the security-based swaps, or class of security-based swap, be deemed the acquisition of beneficial ownership of the equity security.

(p) Disclosures relating to conflict minerals originating in the Democratic Republic of the Congo

(1) Regulations

(A) In general

Not later than 270 days after July 21, 2010, the Commission shall promulgate regulations requiring any person described in paragraph (2) to disclose annually, beginning with the person's first full fiscal year that begins after the date of promulgation of such regulations, whether conflict minerals that are necessary as described in paragraph (2)(B), in the year for which such reporting is required, did originate in the Democratic Republic of the Congo or an adjoining country and, in cases in which such conflict minerals did originate in any such country, submit to the Commission a report that includes, with respect to the period covered by the report—

(i) a description of the measures taken by the person to exercise due diligence on the source and chain of custody of such minerals, which measures shall include an independent private sector audit of such report submitted through the Commission that is conducted in accordance with standards established by the Comptroller General of the United States, in accordance with rules promulgated by the Commission, in consultation with the Secretary of State; and

(ii) a description of the products manufactured or contracted to be manufactured that are not DRC conflict free ("DRC conflict free" is defined to mean the products that do not contain minerals that directly or indirectly finance or benefit armed groups in the Democratic Republic of the Congo or an adjoining country), the entity that conducted the independent private sector audit in accordance with clause (i), the facilities used to process the conflict minerals, the country of origin of the conflict minerals, and the efforts to determine the mine or location of origin with the greatest possible specificity.

(B) Certification

The person submitting a report under subparagraph (A) shall certify the audit described in clause (i) of such subparagraph that is included in such report. Such a certified audit shall constitute a critical component of due diligence in establishing the source and chain of custody of such minerals.

(C) Unreliable determination

If a report required to be submitted by a person under subparagraph (A) relies on a determination of an independent private sector audit, as described under subparagraph (A)(i), or other due diligence processes previously determined by the Commission to be unreliable, the report shall not satisfy the requirements of the regulations promulgated under subparagraph (A)(i).

(D) DRC conflict free

For purposes of this paragraph, a product may be labeled as "DRC conflict free" if the product does not contain conflict minerals that directly or indirectly finance or benefit armed groups in the Democratic Republic of the Congo or an adjoining country.

(E) Information available to the public

Each person described under paragraph (2) shall make available to the public on the Internet website of such person the information disclosed by such person under subparagraph (A).

(2) Person described

A person is described in this paragraph if—

(A) the person is required to file reports with the Commission pursuant to paragraph (1)(A); and

(B) conflict minerals are necessary to the functionality or production of a product manufactured by such person.

(3) Revisions and waivers

The Commission shall revise or temporarily waive the requirements described in paragraph (1) if the President transmits to the Commission a determination that—

(A) such revision or waiver is in the national security interest of the United States and the President includes the reasons therefor; and

(B) establishes a date, not later than 2 years after the initial publication of such exemption, on which such exemption shall expire.

(4) Termination of disclosure requirements

The requirements of paragraph (1) shall terminate on the date on which the President determines and certifies to the appropriate congressional committees, but in no case earlier than the date that is one day after the end of the 5-year period beginning on July 21, 2010, that no armed groups continue to be directly involved and benefitting from commercial activity involving conflict minerals.

(5) Definitions

For purposes of this subsection, the terms "adjoining country", "appropriate congressional committees", "armed group", and "conflict mineral" have the meaning given those terms under section 1502 of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act.

(q) Disclosure of payments by resource extraction issuers

(1) Definitions

In this subsection—

(A) the term "commercial development of oil, natural gas, or minerals" includes exploration, extraction, processing, export, and other significant actions relating to oil, natural gas, or minerals, or the acquisition of a license for any such activity, as determined by the Commission;

(B) the term "foreign government" means a foreign government, a department, agency, or

instrumentality of a foreign government, or a company owned by a foreign government, as determined by the Commission;

(C) the term "payment"—

(i) means a payment that is—

- (I) made to further the commercial development of oil, natural gas, or minerals; and
- (II) not de minimis; and

(ii) includes taxes, royalties, fees (including license fees), production entitlements, bonuses, and other material benefits, that the Commission, consistent with the guidelines of the Extractive Industries Transparency Initiative (to the extent practicable), determines are part of the commonly recognized revenue stream for the commercial development of oil, natural gas, or minerals;

(D) the term "resource extraction issuer" means an issuer that—

- (i) is required to file an annual report with the Commission; and
- (ii) engages in the commercial development of oil, natural gas, or minerals;

(E) the term "interactive data format" means an electronic data format in which pieces of information are identified using an interactive data standard; and

(F) the term "interactive data standard" means [5](#) standardized list of electronic tags that mark information included in the annual report of a resource extraction issuer.

(2) Disclosure

(A) Information required

Not later than 270 days after July 21, 2010, the Commission shall issue final rules that require each resource extraction issuer to include in an annual report of the resource extraction issuer information relating to any payment made by the resource extraction issuer, a subsidiary of the resource extraction issuer, or an entity under the control of the resource extraction issuer to a foreign government or the Federal Government for the purpose of the commercial development of oil, natural gas, or minerals, including—

- (i) the type and total amount of such payments made for each project of the resource extraction issuer relating to the commercial development of oil, natural gas, or minerals; and
- (ii) the type and total amount of such payments made to each government.

(B) Consultation in rulemaking

In issuing rules under subparagraph (A), the Commission may consult with any agency or entity that the Commission determines is relevant.

(C) Interactive data format

The rules issued under subparagraph (A) shall require that the information included in the annual report of a resource extraction issuer be submitted in an interactive data format.

(D) Interactive data standard

(i) In general

The rules issued under subparagraph (A) shall establish an interactive data standard for the information included in the annual report of a resource extraction issuer.

(ii) Electronic tags

The interactive data standard shall include electronic tags that identify, for any payments made by a resource extraction issuer to a foreign government or the Federal Government—

- (I) the total amounts of the payments, by category;
- (II) the currency used to make the payments;
- (III) the financial period in which the payments were made;
- (IV) the business segment of the resource extraction issuer that made the payments;

- (V) the government that received the payments, and the country in which the government is located;
- (VI) the project of the resource extraction issuer to which the payments relate; and
- (VII) such other information as the Commission may determine is necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(E) International transparency efforts

To the extent practicable, the rules issued under subparagraph (A) shall support the commitment of the Federal Government to international transparency promotion efforts relating to the commercial development of oil, natural gas, or minerals.

(F) Effective date

With respect to each resource extraction issuer, the final rules issued under subparagraph (A) shall take effect on the date on which the resource extraction issuer is required to submit an annual report relating to the fiscal year of the resource extraction issuer that ends not earlier than 1 year after the date on which the Commission issues final rules under subparagraph (A).

(3) Public availability of information

(A) In general

To the extent practicable, the Commission shall make available online, to the public, a compilation of the information required to be submitted under the rules issued under paragraph (2)(A).

(B) Other information

Nothing in this paragraph shall require the Commission to make available online information other than the information required to be submitted under the rules issued under paragraph (2)(A).

(4) Authorization of appropriations

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Commission such sums as may be necessary to carry out this subsection.

(r) Disclosure of certain activities relating to Iran

(1) In general

Each issuer required to file an annual or quarterly report under subsection (a) shall disclose in that report the information required by paragraph (2) if, during the period covered by the report, the issuer or any affiliate of the issuer—

- (A) knowingly engaged in an activity described in subsection (a) or (b) of section 5 of the Iran Sanctions Act of 1996 (Public Law 104–172; 50 U.S.C. 1701 note);
- (B) knowingly engaged in an activity described in subsection (c)(2) of section 8513 of title 22 or a transaction described in subsection (d)(1) of that section;
- (C) knowingly engaged in an activity described in section 8514a(b)(2) of title 22; or
- (D) knowingly conducted any transaction or dealing with—
 - (i) any person the property and interests in property of which are blocked pursuant to Executive Order No. 13224 (66 Fed. Reg. 49079; relating to blocking property and prohibiting transactions with persons who commit, threaten to commit, or support terrorism);
 - (ii) any person the property and interests in property of which are blocked pursuant to Executive Order No. 13382 (70 Fed. Reg. 38567; relating to blocking of property of weapons of mass destruction proliferators and their supporters); or
 - (iii) any person or entity identified under section 560.304 of title 31, Code of Federal Regulations (relating to the definition of the Government of Iran) without the specific authorization of a Federal department or agency.

(2) Information required

If an issuer or an affiliate of the issuer has engaged in any activity described in paragraph (1),

the issuer shall disclose a detailed description of each such activity, including—

- (A) the nature and extent of the activity;
- (B) the gross revenues and net profits, if any, attributable to the activity; and
- (C) whether the issuer or the affiliate of the issuer (as the case may be) intends to continue the activity.

(3) Notice of disclosures

If an issuer reports under paragraph (1) that the issuer or an affiliate of the issuer has knowingly engaged in any activity described in that paragraph, the issuer shall separately file with the Commission, concurrently with the annual or quarterly report under subsection (a), a notice that the disclosure of that activity has been included in that annual or quarterly report that identifies the issuer and contains the information required by paragraph (2).

(4) Public disclosure of information

Upon receiving a notice under paragraph (3) that an annual or quarterly report includes a disclosure of an activity described in paragraph (1), the Commission shall promptly—

- (A) transmit the report to—
 - (i) the President;
 - (ii) the Committee on Foreign Affairs and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives; and
 - (iii) the Committee on Foreign Relations and the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate; and

(B) make the information provided in the disclosure and the notice available to the public by posting the information on the Internet website of the Commission.

(5) Investigations

Upon receiving a report under paragraph (4) that includes a disclosure of an activity described in paragraph (1) (other than an activity described in subparagraph (D)(iii) of that paragraph), the President shall—

- (A) initiate an investigation into the possible imposition of sanctions under the Iran Sanctions Act of 1996 (Public Law 104–172; 50 U.S.C. 1701 note), section 8513 or 8514a of title 22, an Executive order specified in clause (i) or (ii) of paragraph (1)(D), or any other provision of law relating to the imposition of sanctions with respect to Iran, as applicable; and
- (B) not later than 180 days after initiating such an investigation, make a determination with respect to whether sanctions should be imposed with respect to the issuer or the affiliate of the issuer (as the case may be).

(6) Sunset

The provisions of this subsection shall terminate on the date that is 30 days after the date on which the President makes the certification described in section 8551(a) of title 22.

(s) Data standards

(1) Requirement

The Commission shall, by rule, adopt data standards for all collections of information with respect to periodic and current reports required to be filed or furnished under this section or under section 780(d) of this title, except that the Commission may exempt exhibits, signatures, and certifications from those data standards.

(2) Consistency

The data standards required under paragraph (1) shall incorporate, and ensure compatibility with (to the extent feasible), all applicable data standards established in the rules promulgated under section 5334 of title 12, including, to the extent practicable, by having the characteristics described in clauses (i) through (vi) of subsection (c)(1)(B) of such section 5334.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §13, 48 Stat. 894; Pub. L. 88–467, §4, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 569;

Pub. L. 90–439, §2, July 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 454; Pub. L. 91–567, §§1, 2, Dec. 22, 1970, 84 Stat. 1497; Pub. L. 94–29, §10, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 119; Pub. L. 94–210, title III, §308(b), Feb. 5, 1976, 90 Stat. 57; Pub. L. 95–213, title I, §102, title II, §§202, 203, Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1494, 1498, 1499; Pub. L. 98–38, §2(a), June 6, 1983, 97 Stat. 205; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §§315, 316, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1256; Pub. L. 100–241, §12(d), Feb. 3, 1988, 101 Stat. 1810; Pub. L. 100–418, title V, §5002, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1415; Pub. L. 101–432, §3, Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 964; Pub. L. 107–123, §5, Jan. 16, 2002, 115 Stat. 2395; Pub. L. 107–204, title I, §109(i), formerly §109(h), title IV, §§401(a), 402(a), 409, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 771, 785, 787, 791, renumbered §109(i), Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §982(h)(3), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1930; Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §§763(i), 766(b), (c), (e), title IX, §§929R(a), 929X(a), 985(b)(4), 991(b)(2), title XV, §§1502(b), 1504, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1779, 1799, 1866, 1870, 1933, 1952, 2213, 2220; Pub. L. 112–106, title I, §102(b)(2), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 309; Pub. L. 112–158, title II, §219(a), Aug. 10, 2012, 126 Stat. 1235; Pub. L. 114–94, div. G, title LXXXVI, §86001(c), Dec. 4, 2015, 129 Stat. 1798; Pub. L. 117–263, div. E, title LVIII, §5821(f), Dec. 23, 2022, 136 Stat. 3426.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this Act", and this chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b)(1), (h)(1), (2), (4), (6), (i), and (n)(6)(B)(v), (C)(i)(I), (7)(A), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d)(6)(A), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Investment Company Act of 1940, referred to in subsecs. (d)(1) and (e)(1), is title I of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 789, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§80a–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80a–51 of this title and Tables.

The Federal Deposit Insurance Act, referred to in subsec. (f)(5), is act Sept. 21, 1950, ch. 967, §2, 64 Stat. 873, which is classified generally to chapter 16 (§1811 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1811 of Title 12 and Tables.

Section 7201 of this title, referred to in subsec. (k)(1), was in the original "section 2 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002", Pub. L. 107–204, which enacted section 7201 of this title and amended section 78c of this title.

The Commodity Exchange Act, referred to in subsec. (n)(8), is act Sept. 21, 1922, ch. 369, 42 Stat. 998, which is classified generally to chapter 1 (§1 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1 of Title 7 and Tables.

Section 1502 of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, referred to in subsec. (p)(5), is section 1502 of Pub. L. 111–203, which amended this section and enacted provisions set out as a note below.

Executive Order No. 13224, referred to in subsec. (r)(1)(D)(i), is Ex. Ord. No. 13224, Sept. 23, 2001, 66 F.R. 49079, which is listed in a table under section 1701 of Title 50, War and National Defense.

Executive Order No. 13382, referred to in subsec. (r)(1)(D)(ii), is Ex. Ord. No. 13382, June 28, 2005, 70 F.R. 38567, which is listed in a table under section 1701 of Title 50, War and National Defense.

AMENDMENTS

2022—Subsec. (s). Pub. L. 117–263 added subsec. (s).

2015—Subsec. (n)(5)(G). Pub. L. 114–94, §86001(c)(1)(A), substituted "make available security-based swap" for "make available all" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (n)(5)(G)(v)(IV). Pub. L. 114–94, §86001(c)(1)(B), added subcl. (IV)

Subsec. (n)(5)(H). Pub. L. 114–94, §86001(c)(2), added subpar. (H) and struck out former subpar. (H) which related to confidentiality and indemnification agreement.

2012—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 112–106 inserted at end of concluding provisions "In any registration statement, periodic report, or other reports to be filed with the Commission, an emerging growth company need not present selected financial data in accordance with section 229.301 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, for any period prior to the earliest audited period presented in connection with its first registration statement that became effective under this chapter or the Securities Act of 1933 and, with respect to any such statement or reports, an emerging growth company may not be required to comply with any new or revised financial

accounting standard until such date that a company that is not an issuer (as defined under section 7201 of this title) is required to comply with such new or revised accounting standard, if such standard applies to companies that are not issuers."

Subsec. (r). Pub. L. 112-158 added subsec. (r).

2010—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111-203, §985(b)(4), substituted "earnings statement" for "earning statement".

Subsec. (b)(2)(C). Pub. L. 111-203, §982(h)(3), amended Pub. L. 107-204, §109. See 2002 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 111-203, §929R(a)(1), in introductory provisions, inserted "or within such shorter time as the Commission may establish by rule" after "within ten days after such acquisition" and struck out "send to the issuer of the security at its principal executive office, by registered or certified mail, send to each exchange where the security is traded, and" before "file with the Commission".

Pub. L. 111-203, §766(b)(1), in introductory provisions, inserted "or otherwise becomes or is deemed to become a beneficial owner of any of the foregoing upon the purchase or sale of a security-based swap that the Commission may define by rule, and" after "section 1629c(d)(6) of title 43,".

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 111-203, §929R(a)(2), struck out "in the statements to the issuer and the exchange, and" after "facts set forth" and "shall be transmitted to the issuer and the exchange and" after "an amendment".

Subsec. (e)(3). Pub. L. 111-203, §991(b)(2)(A), substituted "paragraph (4)" for "paragraphs (5) and (6)".

Subsec. (e)(4) to (6). Pub. L. 111-203, §991(b)(2)(B), (C), added pars. (4) to (6) and struck out former pars. (4) to (6) which related to offsetting collections, annual adjustment of rate, and final rate adjustment, respectively.

Subsec. (e)(8) to (10). Pub. L. 111-203, §991(b)(2)(D), struck out pars. (8) to (10) which related to review and effective date of adjusted rate, collection of fees upon lapse of appropriation, and publication of rate, respectively.

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 111-203, §766(c), which directed insertion of "or otherwise becomes or is deemed to become a beneficial owner of any security of a class described in subsection (d)(1) upon the purchase or sale of a security-based swap that the Commission may define by rule," after "subsection (d)(1) of this section", was executed by making the insertion after "section 13(d)(1) of this title", which was translated to "subsection (d)(1) of this section", to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (f)(2) to (6). Pub. L. 111-203, §929X(a), added par. (2) and redesignated former pars. (2) to (5) as (3) to (6), respectively.

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 111-203, §929R(a)(3), struck out "shall send to the issuer of the security and" before "shall file" in introductory provisions.

Pub. L. 111-203, §766(b)(2), in introductory provisions, inserted "or otherwise becomes or is deemed to become a beneficial owner of any security of a class described in subsection (d)(1) upon the purchase or sale of a security-based swap that the Commission may define by rule" after "subsection (d)(1) of this section".

Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 111-203, §929R(a)(4), struck out "sent to the issuer and" after "the statement" and "shall be transmitted to the issuer and" after "an amendment".

Subsecs. (m), (n). Pub. L. 111-203, §763(i), added subsecs. (m) and (n).

Subsec. (o). Pub. L. 111-203, §766(e), added subsec. (o).

Subsec. (p). Pub. L. 111-203, §1502(b), added subsec. (p).

Subsec. (q). Pub. L. 111-203, §1504, added subsec. (q).

2002—Subsec. (b)(2)(C). Pub. L. 107-204, §109(i), formerly §109(h), renumbered §109(i) by Pub. L. 111-203, §982(h)(3), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (e)(3). Pub. L. 107-123, §5(1), substituted "a fee at a rate that, subject to paragraphs (5) and (6), is equal to \$92 per \$1,000,000 of the value of securities proposed to be purchased" for "a fee of 1/50 of 1 per centum of the value of securities proposed to be purchased".

Subsec. (e)(4) to (10). Pub. L. 107-123, §5(2), added pars. (4) to (10).

Subsecs. (i), (j). Pub. L. 107-204, §401(a), added subsecs. (i) and (j).

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 107-204, §402(a), added subsec. (k).

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 107-204, §409, added subsec. (l).

1990—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 101-432 added subsec. (h).

1988—Subsec. (b)(4) to (7). Pub. L. 100-418 added pars. (4) to (7).

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 100-241 inserted "or any equity security issued by a Native Corporation pursuant to section 1629c(d)(6) of title 43".

1987—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100-181, §315, struck out "of" after "thereof".

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 100-181, §316, struck out subsec. (h) which required Commission to report to Congress within thirty months of Dec. 19, 1977, with respect to effectiveness of ownership reporting

requirements contained in this chapter and desirability and feasibility of reducing or otherwise modifying the 5 per centum threshold used in subsecs. (d)(1) and (g)(1) of this section.

1983—Subsec. (e)(3). Pub. L. 98–38 added par. (3).

1977—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95–213, §102, designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added pars. (2) and (3).

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 95–213, §202, inserted references to residence and citizenship of persons and to nature of beneficial ownership of persons in subpar. (A), and inserted references to background, identity, residence, and citizenship of associates of persons in subpar. (D).

Subsecs. (g), (h). Pub. L. 95–213, §203, added subsecs. (g) and (h).

1976—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94–210 substituted provisions relating to exceptions for inconsistent rules and regulations, for provisions relating to reporting requirements for carriers subject to the provisions of section 20 of title 49, or other carriers required to make reports of the same general character as those required under section 20 of title 49.

1975—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 94–29 added subsec. (f).

1970—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 91–567, §1(a), included equity securities of insurance companies which would have been required to be registered except for the exemption contained in section 78l(g)(2)(G) of this title, and substituted "5 per centum" for "10 per centum".

Subsec. (d)(5), (6). Pub. L. 91–567, §1(b), added par. (5) and redesignated former par. (5) as (6).

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 91–567, §2, inserted provisions empowering the Commission to make rules and regulations implementing the paragraph in the public interest and for the protection of investors.

1968—Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 90–439 added subsecs. (d) and (e).

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88–467 substituted provisions which require the issuer of a security registered pursuant to section 78l of this title to file reports with the Commission rather than with the exchange and to furnish the exchange with duplicate originals and prohibit the Commission from requiring the filing of any material contract wholly executed before July 1, 1962 for former provisions which required the issuer of a security registered on a national securities exchange to file certain reports with the exchange and to file duplicates with the Commission.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2015 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 114–94 effective as if enacted as part of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, Pub. L. 111–203, see section 86001(d) of Pub. L. 114–94, set out as a note under section 7a–1 of Title 7, Agriculture.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2012 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 112–158, title II, §219(b), Aug. 10, 2012, 126 Stat. 1236, provided that: "The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect with respect to reports required to be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission after the date that is 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [Aug. 10, 2012]."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 929R(a), 929X(a), 982(h)(3), 985(b)(4), 1502(b), and 1504 of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by sections 763(i) and 766(b), (c), (e) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

Amendment by section 991(b)(2) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective Oct. 1, 2011, see section 991(b)(4) of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77f of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 107–123 effective Oct. 1, 2001, except that authorities provided by subsec. (e)(9) of this section to not apply until Oct. 1, 2002, see section 11 of Pub. L. 107–123, set out as a note under section 78ee of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–210 not applicable to any report by any person with respect to a fiscal year of such person which began before Feb. 5, 1976, see section 308(d)(2) of Pub. L. 94–210, set out as a note under section 80a–3 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

RULE OF CONSTRUCTION—NO NEW DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS

Amendment by Pub. L. 117–263 not to be construed to require certain additional information to be collected or disclosed, see section 5826 of Pub. L. 117–263, set out as a note under section 77g of this title.

IMPROVING ACCESS TO CAPITAL

Pub. L. 115–174, title V, §508, May 24, 2018, 132 Stat. 1364, provided that: "The Securities and Exchange Commission shall amend—

"(1) section 230.251 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to remove the requirement that the issuer not be subject to section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.) [15 U.S.C. 78m, 78o(d)] immediately before the offering; and

"(2) section 230.257 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, with respect to an offering described in section 230.251(a)(2) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to deem any issuer that is subject to section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 as having met the periodic and current reporting requirements of section 230.257 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, if such issuer meets the reporting requirements of section 13 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934."

SUMMARY PAGE FOR FORM 10–K

Pub. L. 114–94, div. G, title LXXII, §72001, Dec. 4, 2015, 129 Stat. 1784, provided that: "Not later than the end of the 180-day period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act [Dec. 4, 2015], the Securities and Exchange Commission shall issue regulations to permit issuers to submit a summary page on form 10–K (17 CFR 249.310), but only if each item on such summary page includes a cross-reference (by electronic link or otherwise) to the material contained in form 10–K to which such item relates."

ELIMINATION OF EXEMPTION FROM FAIR DISCLOSURE RULE

Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §939B, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1887, provided that: "Not later than 90 days after the date of enactment of this subtitle [July 21, 2010], the Securities [and] Exchange Commission shall revise Regulation FD (17 C.F.R. 243.100) to remove from such regulation the exemption for entities whose primary business is the issuance of credit ratings (17 C.F.R. 243.100(b)(2)(iii))."

CONFLICT MINERALS

Pub. L. 111–203, title XV, §1502, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 2213, as amended by Pub. L. 114–301, §3(b), Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1515, provided that:

"(a) **SENSE OF CONGRESS ON EXPLOITATION AND TRADE OF CONFLICT MINERALS ORIGINATING IN THE DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC OF THE CONGO.**—It is the sense of Congress that the exploitation and trade of conflict minerals originating in the Democratic Republic of the Congo is helping to finance conflict characterized by extreme levels of violence in the eastern Democratic Republic of the Congo, particularly sexual- and gender-based violence, and contributing to an emergency humanitarian situation therein, warranting the provisions of section 13(p) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78m(p)], as added by subsection (b).

"(b) [Amended this section.]

"(c) **STRATEGY AND MAP TO ADDRESS LINKAGES BETWEEN CONFLICT MINERALS AND ARMED GROUPS.**—

"(1) **STRATEGY.**—

"(A) **IN GENERAL.**—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [July 21, 2010], the Secretary of State, in consultation with the Administrator of the United States Agency for

International Development, shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees a strategy to address the linkages between human rights abuses, armed groups, mining of conflict minerals, and commercial products.

"(B) CONTENTS.—The strategy required by subparagraph (A) shall include the following:

"(i) A plan to promote peace and security in the Democratic Republic of the Congo by supporting efforts of the Government of the Democratic Republic of the Congo, including the Ministry of Mines and other relevant agencies, adjoining countries, and the international community, in particular the United Nations Group of Experts on the Democratic Republic of Congo, to—

"(I) monitor and stop commercial activities involving the natural resources of the Democratic Republic of the Congo that contribute to the activities of armed groups and human rights violations in the Democratic Republic of the Congo; and

"(II) develop stronger governance and economic institutions that can facilitate and improve transparency in the cross-border trade involving the natural resources of the Democratic Republic of the Congo to reduce exploitation by armed groups and promote local and regional development.

"(ii) A plan to provide guidance to commercial entities seeking to exercise due diligence on and formalize the origin and chain of custody of conflict minerals used in their products and on their suppliers to ensure that conflict minerals used in the products of such suppliers do not directly or indirectly finance armed conflict or result in labor or human rights violations.

"(iii) A description of punitive measures that could be taken against individuals or entities whose commercial activities are supporting armed groups and human rights violations in the Democratic Republic of the Congo.

"(2) MAP.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [July 21, 2010], the Secretary of State shall, in accordance with the recommendation of the United Nations Group of Experts on the Democratic Republic of the Congo in their December 2008 report—

"(i) produce a map of mineral-rich zones, trade routes, and areas under the control of armed groups in the Democratic Republic of the Congo and adjoining countries based on data from multiple sources, including—

"(I) the United Nations Group of Experts on the Democratic Republic of the Congo;

"(II) the Government of the Democratic Republic of the Congo, the governments of adjoining countries, and the governments of other Member States of the United Nations; and

"(III) local and international nongovernmental organizations;

"(ii) make such map available to the public; and

"(iii) provide to the appropriate congressional committees an explanatory note describing the sources of information from which such map is based and the identification, where possible, of the armed groups or other forces in control of the mines depicted.

"(B) DESIGNATION.—The map required under subparagraph (A) shall be known as the 'Conflict Minerals Map', and mines located in areas under the control of armed groups in the Democratic Republic of the Congo and adjoining countries, as depicted on such Conflict Minerals Map, shall be known as 'Conflict Zone Mines'.

"(C) UPDATES.—The Secretary of State shall update the map required under subparagraph (A) not less frequently than once every 180 days until the date on which the disclosure requirements under paragraph (1) of section 13(p) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78m(p)], as added by subsection (b), terminate in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (4) of such section 13(p).

"(D) PUBLICATION IN FEDERAL REGISTER.—The Secretary of State shall add minerals to the list of minerals in the definition of conflict minerals under section 1502 [amending this section and enacting this note], as appropriate. The Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register notice of intent to declare a mineral as a conflict mineral included in such definition not later than one year before such declaration.

"(d) REPORTS.—

"(1) BASELINE REPORT.—Not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act [July 21, 2010] and annually thereafter through 2020, in 2022, and in 2024, the Comptroller General of the United States shall submit to appropriate congressional committees a report that includes an assessment of the rate of sexual- and gender-based violence in war-torn areas of the Democratic Republic of the Congo and adjoining countries.

"(2) REGULAR REPORT ON EFFECTIVENESS.—Not later than 2 years after the date of the enactment of this Act [July 21, 2010] and annually thereafter through 2020, in 2022, and in 2024, the Comptroller General of the United States shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees a report

that includes the following:

"(A) An assessment of the effectiveness of section 13(p) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78m(p)], as added by subsection (b), in promoting peace and security in the Democratic Republic of the Congo and adjoining countries.

"(B) A description of issues encountered by the Securities and Exchange Commission in carrying out the provisions of such section 13(p).

"(C)(i) A general review of persons described in clause (ii) and whether information is publicly available about—

"(I) the use of conflict minerals by such persons; and

"(II) whether such conflict minerals originate from the Democratic Republic of the Congo or an adjoining country.

"(ii) A person is described in this clause if—

"(I) the person is not required to file reports with the Securities and Exchange Commission pursuant to section 13(p)(1)(A) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78m(p)(1)(A)], as added by subsection (b); and

"(II) conflict minerals are necessary to the functionality or production of a product manufactured by such person.

"(3) REPORT ON PRIVATE SECTOR AUDITING.—Not later than 30 months after the date of the enactment of this Act [July 21, 2010], and annually thereafter, the Secretary of Commerce shall submit to the appropriate congressional committees a report that includes the following:

"(A) An assessment of the accuracy of the independent private sector audits and other due diligence processes described under section 13(p) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78m(p)].

"(B) Recommendations for the processes used to carry out such audits, including ways to—

"(i) improve the accuracy of such audits; and

"(ii) establish standards of best practices.

"(C) A listing of all known conflict mineral processing facilities worldwide.

"(e) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section:

"(1) ADJOINING COUNTRY.—The term 'adjoining country', with respect to the Democratic Republic of the Congo, means a country that shares an internationally recognized border with the Democratic Republic of the Congo.

"(2) APPROPRIATE CONGRESSIONAL COMMITTEES.—The term 'appropriate congressional committees' means—

"(A) the Committee on Appropriations, the Committee on Foreign Affairs, the Committee on Ways and Means, and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives; and

"(B) the Committee on Appropriations, the Committee on Foreign Relations, the Committee on Finance, and the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate.

"(3) ARMED GROUP.—The term 'armed group' means an armed group that is identified as perpetrators of serious human rights abuses in the annual Country Reports on Human Rights Practices under sections 116(d) and 502B(b) of the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961 (22 U.S.C. 2151n(d) and 2304(b)) relating to the Democratic Republic of the Congo or an adjoining country.

"(4) CONFLICT MINERAL.—The term 'conflict mineral' means—

"(A) columbite-tantalite (coltan), cassiterite, gold, wolframite, or their derivatives; or

"(B) any other mineral or its derivatives determined by the Secretary of State to be financing conflict in the Democratic Republic of the Congo or an adjoining country.

"(5) UNDER THE CONTROL OF ARMED GROUPS.—The term 'under the control of armed groups' means areas within the Democratic Republic of the Congo or adjoining countries in which armed groups—

"(A) physically control mines or force labor of civilians to mine, transport, or sell conflict minerals;

"(B) tax, extort, or control any part of trade routes for conflict minerals, including the entire trade route from a Conflict Zone Mine to the point of export from the Democratic Republic of the Congo or an adjoining country; or

"(C) tax, extort, or control trading facilities, in whole or in part, including the point of export from the Democratic Republic of the Congo or an adjoining country."

CONSULTATION

Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §241, Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1407, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Securities and Exchange Commission shall consult and coordinate comments

with the appropriate Federal banking agency before taking any action or rendering any opinion with respect to the manner in which any insured depository institution or depository institution holding company reports loan loss reserves in its financial statement, including the amount of any such loan loss reserve.

"(b) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of subsection (a), the terms 'insured depository institution', 'depository institution holding company', and 'appropriate Federal banking agency' have the same meaning as given in section 3 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1813]."

ADJUSTMENT OF REGISTRATION FEE RATE

By order dated Aug. 25, 2023, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsec. (e) of this section to \$147.60 per \$1,000,000, effective Oct. 1, 2023, see 88 F.R. 59953.

By order dated Aug. 25, 2022, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsec. (e) of this section to \$110.20 per \$1,000,000, effective Oct. 1, 2022, see 87 F.R. 53030.

By order dated Aug. 23, 2021, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsec. (e) of this section to \$92.70 per \$1,000,000, effective Oct. 1, 2021, see 86 F.R. 47696.

By order dated Aug. 26, 2020, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsec. (e) of this section to \$109.10 per \$1,000,000, effective Oct. 1, 2020, see 85 F.R. 53890.

By order dated Aug. 23, 2019, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsec. (e) of this section to \$129.80 per \$1,000,000, effective Oct. 1, 2019, see 84 F.R. 45601.

By order dated Aug. 24, 2018, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsec. (e) of this section to \$121.20 per \$1,000,000, effective Oct. 1, 2018, see 83 F.R. 44101.

By order dated Aug. 24, 2017, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsec. (e) of this section to \$124.50 per \$1,000,000, effective Oct. 1, 2017, see 82 F.R. 41080.

By order dated Aug. 30, 2016, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsec. (e) of this section to \$115.90 per \$1,000,000, effective Oct. 1, 2016, see 81 F.R. 61283.

By order dated Aug. 26, 2015, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsec. (e) of this section to \$100.70 per \$1,000,000, effective Oct. 1, 2015, see 80 F.R. 52824.

By order dated Aug. 29, 2014, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsec. (e) of this section to \$116.20 per \$1,000,000, effective Oct. 1, 2014, see 79 F.R. 52771.

By order dated Aug. 30, 2013, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsec. (e) of this section to \$128.80 per \$1,000,000, effective Oct. 1, 2013, see 78 F.R. 54934.

By order dated Aug. 31, 2012, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsec. (e) of this section to \$136.40 per \$1,000,000, effective Oct. 1, 2012, see 77 F.R. 55240.

By order dated Aug. 31, 2011, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsec. (e) of this section to \$114.60 per \$1,000,000, effective Oct. 1, 2011, see 76 F.R. 55139.

EXECUTIVE DOCUMENTS

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

ASSIGNMENT OF FUNCTION RELATING TO GRANTING OF AUTHORITY FOR ISSUANCE OF CERTAIN DIRECTIVES

Memorandum of President of the United States, May 5, 2006, 71 F.R. 27943, provided:

Memorandum for the Director of National Intelligence

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Constitution and laws of the United States, including section 301 of title 3, United States Code, I hereby assign to you the function of the President under section 13(b)(3)(A) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (15 U.S.C. 78m(b)(3)(A)). In performing such function, you should consult the heads of departments and agencies, as appropriate.

You are authorized and directed to publish this memorandum in the Federal Register.

GEORGE W. BUSH.

¹ [*See Adjustment of Registration Fee Rate notes below.*](#)

² [*So in original. Probably should be "account."*](#)

³ So in original. Section 78c-3(a) of this title does not contain a par. (6).

⁴ So in original. Probably should be "clause (i).".

⁵ So in original. The word "a" probably should appear.

§78m-1. Reporting and recordkeeping for certain security-based swaps

(a) Required reporting of security-based swaps not accepted by any clearing agency or derivatives clearing organization

(1) In general

Each security-based swap that is not accepted for clearing by any clearing agency or derivatives clearing organization shall be reported to—

(A) a security-based swap data repository described in section 78m(n) of this title; or

(B) in the case in which there is no security-based swap data repository that would accept the security-based swap, to the Commission pursuant to this section within such time period as the Commission may by rule or regulation prescribe.

(2) Transition rule for preenactment security-based swaps

(A) Security-based swaps entered into before July 21, 2010

Each security-based swap entered into before July 21, 2010, the terms of which have not expired as of July 21, 2010, shall be reported to a registered security-based swap data repository or the Commission by a date that is not later than—

(i) 30 days after issuance of the interim final rule; or

(ii) such other period as the Commission determines to be appropriate.

(B) Commission rulemaking

The Commission shall promulgate an interim final rule within 90 days of July 21, 2010, providing for the reporting of each security-based swap entered into before July 21, 2010, as referenced in subparagraph (A).

(C) Effective date

The reporting provisions described in this section shall be effective upon July 21, 2010.

(3) Reporting obligations

(A) Security-based swaps in which only 1 counterparty is a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant

With respect to a security-based swap in which only 1 counterparty is a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant, the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant shall report the security-based swap as required under paragraphs (1) and (2).

(B) Security-based swaps in which 1 counterparty is a security-based swap dealer and the other a major security-based swap participant

With respect to a security-based swap in which 1 counterparty is a security-based swap dealer and the other a major security-based swap participant, the security-based swap dealer shall report the security-based swap as required under paragraphs (1) and (2).

(C) Other security-based swaps

With respect to any other security-based swap not described in subparagraph (A) or (B), the counterparties to the security-based swap shall select a counterparty to report the security-based swap as required under paragraphs (1) and (2).

(b) Duties of certain individuals

Any individual or entity that enters into a security-based swap shall meet each requirement described in subsection (c) if the individual or entity did not—

- (1) clear the security-based swap in accordance with section 78c–3(a)(1) of this title; or
- (2) have the data regarding the security-based swap accepted by a security-based swap data repository in accordance with rules (including timeframes) adopted by the Commission under this chapter.

(c) Requirements

An individual or entity described in subsection (b) shall—

- (1) upon written request from the Commission, provide reports regarding the security-based swaps held by the individual or entity to the Commission in such form and in such manner as the Commission may request; and
- (2) maintain books and records pertaining to the security-based swaps held by the individual or entity in such form, in such manner, and for such period as the Commission may require, which shall be open to inspection by—
 - (A) any representative of the Commission;
 - (B) an appropriate prudential regulator;
 - (C) the Commodity Futures Trading Commission;
 - (D) the Financial Stability Oversight Council; and
 - (E) the Department of Justice.

(d) Identical data

In prescribing rules under this section, the Commission shall require individuals and entities described in subsection (b) to submit to the Commission a report that contains data that is not less comprehensive than the data required to be collected by security-based swap data repositories under this chapter.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §13A, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §766(a), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1797.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b)(2) and (d), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note under section 77b of this title.

§78m–2. Reporting requirements regarding coal or other mine safety

(a) Reporting mine safety information

Each issuer that is required to file reports pursuant to section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78m(a), 78o(d)] and that is an operator, or that has a subsidiary that is an operator, of a coal or other mine shall include, in each periodic report filed with the Commission under the securities laws on or after July 21, 2010, the following information for the time period covered by such report:

- (1) For each coal or other mine of which the issuer or a subsidiary of the issuer is an operator—

(A) the total number of violations of mandatory health or safety standards that could significantly and substantially contribute to the cause and effect of a coal or other mine safety or health hazard under section 104 of the Federal Mine Safety and Health Act of 1977 (30 U.S.C. 814) for which the operator received a citation from the Mine Safety and Health Administration;

(B) the total number of orders issued under section 104(b) of such Act (30 U.S.C. 814(b));

(C) the total number of citations and orders for unwarrantable failure of the mine operator to comply with mandatory health or safety standards under section 104(d) of such Act (30 U.S.C. 814(d));

(D) the total number of flagrant violations under section 110(b)(2) of such Act (30 U.S.C. 820(b)(2));

(E) the total number of imminent danger orders issued under section 107(a) of such Act (30 U.S.C. 817(a));

(F) the total dollar value of proposed assessments from the Mine Safety and Health Administration under such Act (30 U.S.C. 801 et seq.); and

(G) the total number of mining-related fatalities.

(2) A list of such coal or other mines, of which the issuer or a subsidiary of the issuer is an operator, that receive written notice from the Mine Safety and Health Administration of—

(A) a pattern of violations of mandatory health or safety standards that are of such nature as could have significantly and substantially contributed to the cause and effect of coal or other mine health or safety hazards under section 104(e) of such Act (30 U.S.C. 814(e)); or

(B) the potential to have such a pattern.

(3) Any pending legal action before the Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission involving such coal or other mine.

(b) Reporting shutdowns and patterns of violations

Beginning on and after July 21, 2010, each issuer that is an operator, or that has a subsidiary that is an operator, of a coal or other mine shall file a current report with the Commission on Form 8-K (or any successor form) disclosing the following regarding each coal or other mine of which the issuer or subsidiary is an operator:

(1) The receipt of an imminent danger order issued under section 107(a) of the Federal Mine Safety and Health Act of 1977 (30 U.S.C. 817(a)).

(2) The receipt of written notice from the Mine Safety and Health Administration that the coal or other mine has—

(A) a pattern of violations of mandatory health or safety standards that are of such nature as could have significantly and substantially contributed to the cause and effect of coal or other mine health or safety hazards under section 104(e) of such Act (30 U.S.C. 814(e)); or

(B) the potential to have such a pattern.

(c) Rule of construction

Nothing in this section shall be construed to affect any obligation of a person to make a disclosure under any other applicable law in effect before, on, or after July 21, 2010.

(d) Commission authority

(1) Enforcement

A violation by any person of this section, or any rule or regulation of the Commission issued under this section, shall be treated for all purposes in the same manner as a violation of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.) or the rules and regulations issued thereunder, consistent with the provisions of this section, and any such person shall be subject to the same penalties, and to the same extent, as for a violation of such Act or the rules or regulations issued thereunder.

(2) Rules and regulations

The Commission is authorized to issue such rules or regulations as are necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors and to carry out the purposes of this section.

(e) Definitions

In this section—

(1) the terms "issuer" and "securities laws" have the meaning given the terms in section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c);

(2) the term "coal or other mine" means a coal or other mine, as defined in section 3 of the Federal Mine Safety and Health Act of 1977 (30 U.S.C. 802), that is subject to the provisions of such Act (30 U.S.C. 801 et seq.); and

(3) the term "operator" has the meaning given the term in section 3 of the Federal Mine Safety and Health Act of 1977 (30 U.S.C. 802).

(f) Effective date

This section shall take effect on the day that is 30 days after July 21, 2010.

(Pub. L. 111–203, title XV, §1503, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 2218.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Such Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1)(F) and (e)(2), is the Federal Mine Safety and Health Act of 1977, Pub. L. 91–173, Dec. 30, 1969, 83 Stat. 742, which is classified principally to chapter 22 (§801 et seq.) of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 801 of Title 30 and Tables.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, which is classified principally to this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, and not as part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

DEFINITIONS

For definitions of terms used in this section, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

§78n. Proxies

(a) Solicitation of proxies in violation of rules and regulations

(1) It shall be unlawful for any person, by the use of the mails or by any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or of any facility of a national securities exchange or otherwise, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to solicit or to permit the use of his name to solicit any proxy or consent or authorization in respect of any security (other than an exempted security) registered pursuant to section 78l of this title.

(2) The rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission under paragraph (1) may include—

(A) a requirement that a solicitation of proxy, consent, or authorization by (or on behalf of) an issuer include a nominee submitted by a shareholder to serve on the board of directors of the issuer; and

(B) a requirement that an issuer follow a certain procedure in relation to a solicitation described in subparagraph (A).

(b) Giving or refraining from giving proxy in respect of any security carried for account of

customer

(1) It shall be unlawful for any member of a national securities exchange, or any broker or dealer registered under this chapter, or any bank, association, or other entity that exercises fiduciary powers, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to give, or to refrain from giving a proxy, consent, authorization, or information statement in respect of any security registered pursuant to section 78l of this title, or any security issued by an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-1 et seq.], and carried for the account of a customer.

(2) With respect to banks, the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission under paragraph (1) shall not require the disclosure of the names of beneficial owners of securities in an account held by the bank on December 28, 1985, unless the beneficial owner consents to the disclosure. The provisions of this paragraph shall not apply in the case of a bank which the Commission finds has not made a good faith effort to obtain such consent from such beneficial owners.

(c) Information to holders of record prior to annual or other meeting

Unless proxies, consents, or authorizations in respect of a security registered pursuant to section 78l of this title, or a security issued by an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-1 et seq.], are solicited by or on behalf of the management of the issuer from the holders of record of such security in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed under subsection (a) of this section, prior to any annual or other meeting of the holders of such security, such issuer shall, in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission, file with the Commission and transmit to all holders of record of such security information substantially equivalent to the information which would be required to be transmitted if a solicitation were made, but no information shall be required to be filed or transmitted pursuant to this subsection before July 1, 1964.

(d) Tender offer by owner of more than five per centum of class of securities; exceptions

(1) It shall be unlawful for any person, directly or indirectly, by use of the mails or by any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or of any facility of a national securities exchange or otherwise, to make a tender offer for, or a request or invitation for tenders of, any class of any equity security which is registered pursuant to section 78l of this title, or any equity security of an insurance company which would have been required to be so registered except for the exemption contained in section 78l(g)(2)(G) of this title, or any equity security issued by a closed-end investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-1 et seq.], if, after consummation thereof, such person would, directly or indirectly, be the beneficial owner of more than 5 per centum of such class, unless at the time copies of the offer or request or invitation are first published or sent or given to security holders such person has filed with the Commission a statement containing such of the information specified in section 78m(d) of this title, and such additional information as the Commission may by rules and regulations prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. All requests or invitations for tenders or advertisements making a tender offer or requesting or inviting tenders of such a security shall be filed as a part of such statement and shall contain such of the information contained in such statement as the Commission may by rules and regulations prescribe. Copies of any additional material soliciting or requesting such tender offers subsequent to the initial solicitation or request shall contain such information as the Commission may by rules and regulations prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, and shall be filed with the Commission not later than the time copies of such material are first published or sent or given to security holders. Copies of all statements, in the form in which such material is furnished to security holders and the Commission, shall be sent to the issuer not later than the date such material is first published or sent or given to any security holders.

(2) When two or more persons act as a partnership, limited partnership, syndicate, or other group for the purpose of acquiring, holding, or disposing of securities of an issuer, such syndicate or group

shall be deemed a "person" for purposes of this subsection.

(3) In determining, for purposes of this subsection, any percentage of a class of any security, such class shall be deemed to consist of the amount of the outstanding securities of such class, exclusive of any securities of such class held by or for the account of the issuer or a subsidiary of the issuer.

(4) Any solicitation or recommendation to the holders of such a security to accept or reject a tender offer or request or invitation for tenders shall be made in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(5) Securities deposited pursuant to a tender offer or request or invitation for tenders may be withdrawn by or on behalf of the depositor at any time until the expiration of seven days after the time definitive copies of the offer or request or invitation are first published or sent or given to security holders, and at any time after sixty days from the date of the original tender offer or request or invitation, except as the Commission may otherwise prescribe by rules, regulations, or order as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(6) Where any person makes a tender offer, or request or invitation for tenders, for less than all the outstanding equity securities of a class, and where a greater number of securities is deposited pursuant thereto within ten days after copies of the offer or request or invitation are first published or sent or given to security holders than such person is bound or willing to take up and pay for, the securities taken up shall be taken up as nearly as may be pro rata, disregarding fractions, according to the number of securities deposited by each depositor. The provisions of this subsection shall also apply to securities deposited within ten days after notice of an increase in the consideration offered to security holders, as described in paragraph (7), is first published or sent or given to security holders.

(7) Where any person varies the terms of a tender offer or request or invitation for tenders before the expiration thereof by increasing the consideration offered to holders of such securities, such person shall pay the increased consideration to each security holder whose securities are taken up and paid for pursuant to the tender offer or request or invitation for tenders whether or not such securities have been taken up by such person before the variation of the tender offer or request or invitation.

(8) The provisions of this subsection shall not apply to any offer for, or request or invitation for tenders of, any security—

(A) if the acquisition of such security, together with all other acquisitions by the same person of securities of the same class during the preceding twelve months, would not exceed 2 per centum of that class;

(B) by the issuer of such security; or

(C) which the Commission, by rules or regulations or by order, shall exempt from the provisions of this subsection as not entered into for the purpose of, and not having the effect of, changing or influencing the control of the issuer or otherwise as not comprehended within the purposes of this subsection.

(e) Untrue statement of material fact or omission of fact with respect to tender offer

It shall be unlawful for any person to make any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact necessary in order to make the statements made, in the light of the circumstances under which they are made, not misleading, or to engage in any fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative acts or practices, in connection with any tender offer or request or invitation for tenders, or any solicitation of security holders in opposition to or in favor of any such offer, request, or invitation. The Commission shall, for the purposes of this subsection, by rules and regulations define, and prescribe means reasonably designed to prevent, such acts and practices as are fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative.

(f) Election or designation of majority of directors of issuer by owner of more than five per centum of class of securities at other than meeting of security holders

If, pursuant to any arrangement or understanding with the person or persons acquiring securities in a transaction subject to subsection (d) of this section or subsection (d) of section 78m of this title,

any persons are to be elected or designated as directors of the issuer, otherwise than at a meeting of security holders, and the persons so elected or designated will constitute a majority of the directors of the issuer, then, prior to the time any such person takes office as a director, and in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission, the issuer shall file with the Commission, and transmit to all holders of record of securities of the issuer who would be entitled to vote at a meeting for election of directors, information substantially equivalent to the information which would be required by subsection (a) or (c) of this section to be transmitted if such person or persons were nominees for election as directors at a meeting of such security holders.

(g) Filing fees

(1)(A) At the time of filing such preliminary proxy solicitation material as the Commission may require by rule pursuant to subsection (a) of this section that concerns an acquisition, merger, consolidation, or proposed sale or other disposition of substantially all the assets of a company, the person making such filing, other than a company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-1 et seq.], shall pay to the Commission the following fees:

(i) for preliminary proxy solicitation material involving an acquisition, merger, or consolidation, if there is a proposed payment of cash or transfer of securities or property to shareholders, a fee at a rate that, subject to paragraph (4), is equal to \$92 ¹/₁₀₀ per \$1,000,000 of such proposed payment, or of the value of such securities or other property proposed to be transferred; and

(ii) for preliminary proxy solicitation material involving a proposed sale or other disposition of substantially all of the assets of a company, a fee at a rate that, subject to paragraph (4), is equal to \$92 ¹/₁₀₀ per \$1,000,000 of the cash or of the value of any securities or other property proposed to be received upon such sale or disposition.

(B) The fee imposed under subparagraph (A) shall be reduced with respect to securities in an amount equal to any fee paid to the Commission with respect to such securities in connection with the proposed transaction under section 77f(b) of this title, or the fee paid under that section shall be reduced in an amount equal to the fee paid to the Commission in connection with such transaction under this subsection. Where two or more companies involved in an acquisition, merger, consolidation, sale, or other disposition of substantially all the assets of a company must file such proxy material with the Commission, each shall pay a proportionate share of such fee.

(2) At the time of filing such preliminary information statement as the Commission may require by rule pursuant to subsection (c) of this section, the issuer shall pay to the Commission the same fee as required for preliminary proxy solicitation material under paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(3) At the time of filing such statement as the Commission may require by rule pursuant to subsection (d)(1) of this section, the person making the filing shall pay to the Commission a fee at a rate that, subject to paragraph (4), is equal to \$92 ¹/₁₀₀ per \$1,000,000 of the aggregate amount of cash or of the value of securities or other property proposed to be offered. The fee shall be reduced with respect to securities in an amount equal to any fee paid with respect to such securities in connection with the proposed transaction under section 6(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77f(b)), or the fee paid under that section shall be reduced in an amount equal to the fee paid to the Commission in connection with such transaction under this subsection.

(4) ANNUAL ADJUSTMENT.—For each fiscal year, the Commission shall by order adjust the rate required by paragraphs (1) and (3) for such fiscal year to a rate that is equal to the rate (expressed in dollars per million) that is applicable under section 6(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77f(b)) for such fiscal year.

(5) FEE COLLECTION.—Fees collected pursuant to this subsection for fiscal year 2012 and each fiscal year thereafter shall be deposited and credited as general revenue of the Treasury and shall not be available for obligation.

(6) REVIEW; EFFECTIVE DATE; PUBLICATION.—In exercising its authority under this subsection, the Commission shall not be required to comply with the provisions of section 553 of title 5. An adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (4) shall be published and take effect in accordance with section 6(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77f(b)).

(7) PRO RATA APPLICATION.—The rates per \$1,000,000 required by this subsection shall be applied pro rata to amounts and balances of less than \$1,000,000.

(8) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission may impose fees, charges, or prices for matters not involving any acquisition, merger, consolidation, sale, or other disposition of assets described in this subsection, as authorized by section 9701 of title 31, or otherwise.

(h) Proxy solicitations and tender offers in connection with limited partnership rollup transactions

(1) Proxy rules to contain special provisions

It shall be unlawful for any person to solicit any proxy, consent, or authorization concerning a limited partnership rollup transaction, or to make any tender offer in furtherance of a limited partnership rollup transaction, unless such transaction is conducted in accordance with rules prescribed by the Commission under subsections (a) and (d) as required by this subsection. Such rules shall—

(A) permit any holder of a security that is the subject of the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction to engage in preliminary communications for the purpose of determining whether to solicit proxies, consents, or authorizations in opposition to the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction, without regard to whether any such communication would otherwise be considered a solicitation of proxies, and without being required to file soliciting material with the Commission prior to making that determination, except that—

(i) nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed to limit the application of any provision of this chapter prohibiting, or reasonably designed to prevent, fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative acts or practices under this chapter; and

(ii) any holder of not less than 5 percent of the outstanding securities that are the subject of the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction who engages in the business of buying and selling limited partnership interests in the secondary market shall be required to disclose such ownership interests and any potential conflicts of interests in such preliminary communications;

(B) require the issuer to provide to holders of the securities that are the subject of the limited partnership rollup transaction such list of the holders of the issuer's securities as the Commission may determine in such form and subject to such terms and conditions as the Commission may specify;

(C) prohibit compensating any person soliciting proxies, consents, or authorizations directly from security holders concerning such a limited partnership rollup transaction—

(i) on the basis of whether the solicited proxy, consent, or authorization either approves or disapproves the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction; or

(ii) contingent on the approval, disapproval, or completion of the limited partnership rollup transaction;

(D) set forth disclosure requirements for soliciting material distributed in connection with a limited partnership rollup transaction, including requirements for clear, concise, and comprehensible disclosure with respect to—

(i) any changes in the business plan, voting rights, form of ownership interest, or the compensation of the general partner in the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction from each of the original limited partnerships;

(ii) the conflicts of interest, if any, of the general partner;

(iii) whether it is expected that there will be a significant difference between the exchange values of the limited partnerships and the trading price of the securities to be issued in the limited partnership rollup transaction;

(iv) the valuation of the limited partnerships and the method used to determine the value of the interests of the limited partners to be exchanged for the securities in the limited partnership rollup transaction;

- (v) the differing risks and effects of the limited partnership rollup transaction for investors in different limited partnerships proposed to be included, and the risks and effects of completing the limited partnership rollup transaction with less than all limited partnerships;
- (vi) the statement by the general partner required under subparagraph (E);
- (vii) such other matters deemed necessary or appropriate by the Commission;

(E) require a statement by the general partner as to whether the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction is fair or unfair to investors in each limited partnership, a discussion of the basis for that conclusion, and an evaluation and a description by the general partner of alternatives to the limited partnership rollup transaction, such as liquidation;

(F) provide that, if the general partner or sponsor has obtained any opinion (other than an opinion of counsel), appraisal, or report that is prepared by an outside party and that is materially related to the limited partnership rollup transaction, such soliciting materials shall contain or be accompanied by clear, concise, and comprehensible disclosure with respect to—

- (i) the analysis of the transaction, scope of review, preparation of the opinion, and basis for and methods of arriving at conclusions, and any representations and undertakings with respect thereto;

- (ii) the identity and qualifications of the person who prepared the opinion, the method of selection of such person, and any material past, existing, or contemplated relationships between the person or any of its affiliates and the general partner, sponsor, successor, or any other affiliate;

- (iii) any compensation of the preparer of such opinion, appraisal, or report that is contingent on the transaction's approval or completion; and

- (iv) any limitations imposed by the issuer on the access afforded to such preparer to the issuer's personnel, premises, and relevant books and records;

(G) provide that, if the general partner or sponsor has obtained any opinion, appraisal, or report as described in subparagraph (F) from any person whose compensation is contingent on the transaction's approval or completion or who has not been given access by the issuer to its personnel and premises and relevant books and records, the general partner or sponsor shall state the reasons therefor;

(H) provide that, if the general partner or sponsor has not obtained any opinion on the fairness of the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction to investors in each of the affected partnerships, such soliciting materials shall contain or be accompanied by a statement of such partner's or sponsor's reasons for concluding that such an opinion is not necessary in order to permit the limited partners to make an informed decision on the proposed transaction;

(I) require that the soliciting material include a clear, concise, and comprehensible summary of the limited partnership rollup transaction (including a summary of the matters referred to in clauses (i) through (vii) of subparagraph (D) and a summary of the matter referred to in subparagraphs (F), (G), and (H)), with the risks of the limited partnership rollup transaction set forth prominently in the fore part thereof;

(J) provide that any solicitation or offering period with respect to any proxy solicitation, tender offer, or information statement in a limited partnership rollup transaction shall be for not less than the lesser of 60 calendar days or the maximum number of days permitted under applicable State law; and

(K) contain such other provisions as the Commission determines to be necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors in limited partnership rollup transactions.

(2) Exemptions

The Commission may, consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this chapter, exempt by rule or order any security or class of securities, any transaction or class of transactions, or any person or class of persons, in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, from the requirements imposed pursuant to paragraph (1) or from the definition contained in paragraph (4).